

Join Us On Facebook :

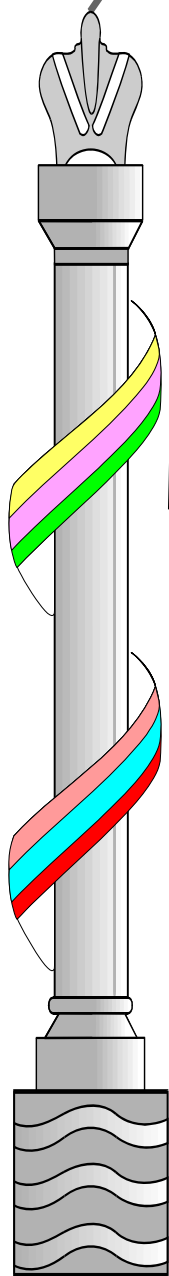
Primary Teachers of English All Over the World

**جروب شامل يضم جميع المراحل
التعليمية**

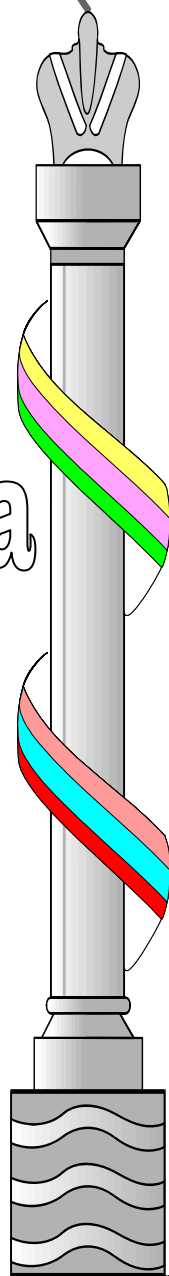




Secondary Three



The Prisoner of Zenda



Contents

No	Title	Page
	Anthony Hope	4
	Characters	4 - 5
1	Chapter 1	6 - 18
Chapter One	Vocabulary	6
	Question & Answers	6 - 9
	Quotation & Answers	10 - 15
	Mistake Correction	15
	Questions of the set book	15 - 16
	Test yourself	16 - 18
2	Chapter 2	19 - 32
Chapter Two	Vocabulary	19
	Question & Answers	19 - 21
	Quotation & Answers	22 - 28
	Mistake Correction	28 - 30
	Questions of the set book	30 - 31
	Test yourself	31 - 32
3	Chapter 3	33 - 45
Chapter Three	Vocabulary	33
	Question & Answers	33 - 36
	Quotation & Answers	36 - 40
	Mistake Correction	40 - 41
	Questions of the set book	41 - 42
	Test yourself	43 - 45
4	Chapter 4	46 - 59
Chapter Four	Vocabulary	46
	Question & Answers	46 - 49
	Quotation & Answers	49 - 54
	Mistake Correction	54 - 55
	Questions of the set book	55 - 56
	Test yourself	56 - 59
5	Chapter 5	60 - 75
Chapter Five	Vocabulary	60
	Question & Answers	60 - 63
	Quotation & Answers	63 - 70
	Mistake Correction	70 - 71
	Questions of the set book	71 - 73
	Test yourself	73 - 75

6	Chapter 6	76 – 85
Chapter six	Vocabulary	76
	Question & Answers	76 – 78
	Quotation & Answers	78 – 82
	Mistake Correction	82
	Questions of the set book	83 – 84
	Test yourself	84 - 85
7	Chapter 7	86 – 93
Chapter Seven	Vocabulary	86
	Question & Answers	86 – 88
	Quotation & Answers	88 – 90
	Mistake Correction	90 – 91
	Questions of the set book	91 – 92
	Test yourself	92 - 93
8	Chapter 8	94 – 105
Chapter Eight	Vocabulary	94
	Question & Answers	94 – 97
	Quotation & Answers	97 – 102
	Mistake Correction	102
	Questions of the set book	102 – 104
	Test yourself	104 - 105
9	Final Revision	
Final Revision	Chapter 1	106 – 107
	Chapter 2	107 – 108
	Chapter 3	108 – 109
	Chapter 4	109 – 110
	Chapter 5	111 – 112
	Chapter 6	112 – 113
	Chapter 7	113 – 114
	Chapter 8	114 - 115

Anthony Hope

The *Prisoner of Zenda* was written by *Anthony Hope*. He was born in 1863 in London, England. He was educated and got first-class degrees in classics, philosophy and ancient history. Hope had great interest in politics throughout his life. He published around thirty fictional works in his lifetime, but it was *The Prisoner of Zenda* that made him famous. It was a classic adventure novel. Hope died of throat cancer in 1933.

Characters

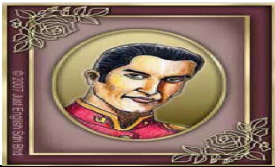
Rudolf Rassendyll

He is a rich Englishman. He is 29 years old when the story starts. He is well-educated and intelligent. He does not believe in working for a living because he is comfortable with his inheritance and social status. He is fun-loving and adventurous. He is kind and compassionate. He agrees to impersonate Rudolf the Fifth to help save him and his crown. He is a man of honour. He is a brave warrior who risks his life to rescue the King.



Rudolf Rassendyll

King Rudolf the Fifth

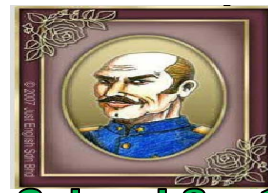


He's the king of Ruritania who loves good food and hunting. He's not known by many of his people as he is always abroad. He's kidnapped and imprisoned by his brother, Duke Michael. He's saved by Rudolf and regains his crown. He becomes a more responsible King after that.

King Rudolf the Fifth

Colonel Sapt

He's the King's chief adviser. He's short. He's firm but kind. He is wise, intelligent and careful. He's dutiful, loyal and faithful to King Rudolf. He persuades Rassendyll to impersonate the King to save his crown. He helps and guides Rassendyll in all his formal duties. He's a brave warrior and would not hesitate to sacrifice his life for the King. He believes in fate as he believes it is fates that has sent Rudolf to save the King.



Colonel Sapt

Fritz von Tarlenheim



He is one of the king's men. He is a loyal friend and advisor to the King. He helps Rudolf in his role as a king. He is brave and daring in the rescue mission to save the King.

Fritz von Tarlenheim

Princess Flavia

She is a beautiful princess who is engaged to the King. She is sweet and caring. She is observant and she notices some differences between Rudolf Rassendyll and King Rudolf. She worries about Rudolf's safety and welfare. She would not hesitate to go to Rudolf when she heard that he was ill or in trouble.



Princess Flavia

Duke Michael



He is half-brother of Rudolf the Fifth. He is the Duke of Strelsau in Ruritania. He spends a lot of time with the people. He is popular and many people want him to be King. He is ambitious, cunning, wicked, evil and cruel. He kidnaps King Rudolf with the intention of killing him. He has loyal supporters especially his 'Famous Six'. He is killed by Rupert of Hentzau.

Duke Micheal

Antoinette de Mauban

She is a beautiful, tall French woman. She is about 30 years. She is aware of the Duke's wickedness and evil plan to kill the King. She betrays the Duke when she informs Rassendyll of the Duke's plan to kill him. She helps Rassendyll to escape from his enemies.



Antoinette de Mauban

The 'Famous Six'

These are the personal bodyguards of the Duke. They are fearless, cruel and will not hesitate to kill. They consist of three Ruritans and three foreigners. They are involved in the kidnapping of

the King. Three of them guard the King and three follow the Duke wherever he goes. They are:

- 1) De Gautet (French) 2) Bersonin (Belgian) 3) Detchard (Englishman)
- 4) Rupert Hentzau (leader) 5) Lauengram 6)Krafstein



The 'Famous Six'

Robert Rassendyll (Lord Burlesdon)

- He is Rudolf Rassendyll's brother.

Rose Rassendyll

- She is Rudolf Rassendyll's sister-in-law.

Countess Amelia Rassendyll

- She is an aunt of the Rassendylls who was married to a member of the Ruritania royal family.

George Featherly

- He is an English friend of Rudolf Rassendyll who works in the Paris embassy.

Bertram Bertrand

- He is an English journalist who works in Paris.

Marshal Strakencz

- He is an important person in the King of Ruritania's army.

Bernenstein

- He is a trusted gentleman, one of those who helps to rescue the King.

Josef

- He is the personal servant of the King of Ruritania.

Freyler

- He is a servant at the King's palace.

Sir Jacob Borrodaile

- He is an important Englishman who is about to become an ambassador.

Johann

- He is a servant who works in the Castle of Zenda.

Max Holf

- He is Johann's brother who works for Duke Michael.

Chapter 1

Action	معركة/ الدخول في معركة	gentleman	رجل نبيل	responsibilities	مسئوليات
dining room	غرفة الطعام	good with a gun	مصوب بارع بالمسدس	responsible for	مسئول عن
deep voice	صوت عميق	guesses	تخمينات	royal family	العائلة الملكية
ambassador	سفير	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق	run	يدير
ambition	الطموح / التطلعات	has nothing to do with	ليس له علاقة بـ	Ruritania	بلد خيالية وسط أوروبا
annoy	يضايق / يُغضب	hills	التلال	servant	خادم
appearance	مظهر / شكل	hunting lodge	كوخ يستخدم وقت الصيد	set off	ينطلق في رحلة
army	جيش	I'd say	في تقديري	shade	ظل
border	حدود	identical	متطابقان	shake hands	يصافح باليد
call on	يزور	in amazement	في دهول	sister-in-law	زوجة الأخ
care about	يهتم بـ	inn	فندق ريفي	social	اجتماعي
castle	قلعة	joyous	سعيد / مبتهج / سار	sounded interesting	بدت مثيرة للاهتمام
celebrations	احتفالات	light blue	أزرق فاتح	stare at	يحدق النظر في
check in	ينزل في فندق	lord	الورد (لقب اوروبي)	step back	يتراجع للوراء
colonel	عقيد (رتبة)	luggage	حقائب السفر	straight nose	أنف مستقيمة
contact	يتصل بـ	mansion	بيت كبير / قصر	sword	سيف
Continental Hotel	فندق كونتيننتال	medium height	متوسط الطول	swordsman	مبارز بالسيف
coronation	حفل تتويج الملك	moat	خندق مائي	take off	يخلع (ملابس)
countess	كونتيسة (لقب اوروبي)	moreover	علاوة على ذلك	the Alps	جبال الألب
descendants	أحفاد	opportunities	فرص	the forest	الغابة
drawbridge	جسر متحرك	paintings	لوحات	tough	قوي البنية / صارم
Dresden	مدينة ألمانية	peaceful	مسالم	trader	تاجر
Duke	دوق (لقب اوروبي)	personalities	شخصيات	twins	توأم
egg spoon	ملعقة تقشير بيض	politics	السياسة	wake	يوقظ من النوم
embassy	سفارة	position	مركز اجتماعي	well built	ذات بناء متين
excitement	الاثارة	realise	يدرك	well-defended	محصن جيدا
extraordinary	عجيب / مدهش	relaxed	مسترخي	Why, look at him!	يا للعجب! انظر إليه!
fashionable	مساير للموضة	remain	يبقى / يظل	wonder	يتساءل

Questions & Answers

- Where was Rudolf having breakfast? - *In the dining room of his brother's house.*
- What was Rudolf thinking about while having breakfast? - *About what he would do that week.*
- Who came into the dining room while Rudolf was having his breakfast? - *Rose.*
- How old was Rudolf? What job did he do at that time? - *He was 29. He didn't have a job.*
- What did Rose urge Rudolf to do? - *To do anything useful by doing a job.*
- How did Rudolf justify not being willing to work? = Why did Rudolf think he needn't work?
= Why do you think Rudolf was satisfied with being jobless?
- *Because he had nearly enough money to do any thing he wanted. He enjoyed an important position in society. His brother was Lord Burlesdon and his sister - in - law was a countess.*
- Why did Rudolf think he had a prominent\ outstanding position in the society?
- *Because his brother was Lord Burlesdon and his sister - in - law was a countess.*
- What did Rose blame Rudolf for? - *For doing nothing except being lazy.*
- How did Rudolf justify being lazy? = What did Rudolf boast about?
= How did Rudolf justify his tendency\ readiness to be lazy?
- *He was a member of the Rassendyll family and his family didn't need to do things.*
- Why was Rose annoyed at Rudolf's boast?
- *Because her family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls.*
- Who was Lord Burlesdon? - *He was Rudolf's brother whom they called Robert.*

12. How did Rudolf explain Rose's anger to his brother?
- ***She was angry because she thought Rudolf was jobless.***
13. How did Rudolf prove that he was hard-working when he was young?
- ***He had studied hard and he learned a lot when he was at a German school and German university.***
14. Rudolf was multilingual person. Explain.
- ***He spoke German as well as he spoke English. He also knew how to speak French, Italian and Spanish.***
15. Rudolf had many good qualities that made him a good gentleman. Illustrate.
- ***He spoke German as well as he spoke English. He also knew how to speak French, Italian and Spanish. He was good with a gun and he was a strong swordsman. He was also very good at riding a horse.***
16. What did Rose think make Rudolf different from his brother?
- ***Robert realised his position in society had responsibilities.***
17. What good news did Rose tell Rudolf about the job?
= What did Sir Jacob Borrodaile offer Rudolf? - ***Sir Jacob Borrodaile was going to be an ambassador in six months' time and he was happy for Rudolf to work for him.***
18. How did Rose convince Rudolf to take the job Sir Jacob Borrodaile offered?
- ***Rose had a way of asking people to do things which was impossible to refuse. Moreover, Rudolf thought this job sounded quite interesting.***
19. Rose was a very convincing \ persuasive woman. Explain.
- ***Rose had a way of asking people to do things which was impossible to refuse. She persuaded Rudolf to take the job Sir Jacob Borrodaile offered.***
20. Rudolf was curious about the job he was offered. Explain.
- ***He wanted to know where Sir Jacob was going to work.***
21. What information did Sir Jacob have about this work?
- ***He didn't know which country he would work in, but he was sure it would be a good embassy.***
22. What did Rudolf promise Rose about the job he was offered?
- ***He would take the job. He would do it, even if it was a terrible embassy only for her.***
23. What would Rudolf do in the six months before getting the job?
- ***He decided that he would visit Ruritania.***
24. Why was Rudolf interested in visiting Ruritania?
- ***Because Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs in 1733. He also wanted to attend the coronation.***
25. Why did Rudolf's family have interest in Ruritania?
= How did it happen that the Rudolfs have relatives in Ruritania?
- ***In 1733, Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs.***
26. What was common among the descendants of his aunt? - ***They have red hair and straight noses.***
27. Whose paintings did Rudolf's brother have on his walls?
- ***Paintings of his aunt and her descendants.***
28. What did Rudolf read in the Times? - ***Rudolf the Fifth was to become King of Ruritania in the next three weeks, and that amazing celebrations were planned for this joyous occasion.***
29. What event motivated Rudolf to begin to prepare for his journey to Ruritania?
- ***He would attend the event of the coronation of the king of Ruritania.***
30. Why do you think Rudolf was mysterious? - ***He didn't like to tell people where he was going.***
31. Where did he tell Rose he was going?
= How did Rudolf try to prove to Rose that he wasn't lazy?
- ***He told her he was going to write a book about social problems in the Alps.***
32. What did Rose and Robert think of Rudolf writing a book? - ***Rose thought that would be such a good thing to do. Robert thought that writing a book was the best way to get into politics.***
33. Why did Robert think writing a book was the best way to get into politics?
- ***As he wrote many books himself and he worked on politics.***
34. How did Rudolf take his uncle's advice about Paris?
- ***Rudolf took his uncle's advice and booked a night at The Continental Hotel in Paris.***
35. How long did Rudolf stay in Paris? Where? - ***One night at The Continental Hotel.***
36. Rudolf had many contacts in Paris. Explain. - ***Rudolf met George Featherly, who worked at the embassy, and Bertram Bertrand, who was a famous journalist in the city.***

37. Who was George Featherly? - ***He was a friend of Rudolf's in Paris who worked at the embassy.***
38. Who was Bertram Bertrand? ***He was a friend of Rudolf's in Paris who was a famous journalist.***
39. What did Rudolf do in Paris? - ***He booked a night at The Continental Hotel. He met some old friends. They all ate in a restaurant and they told Rudolf all about the latest exciting events in Paris.***
40. What interesting news did Rudolf's friends tell him?
- ***They told him all about the latest exciting events in Paris and about Antoinette de Mauban.***
41. Who was Antoinette de Mauban? What was Antoinette well-known for?
- ***She was a beautiful, tall and fashionably dressed woman of about thirty. She was a lady who was well known for her wealth and ambition.***
42. Why did Lady Antoinette de Mauban visit Paris? When was she leaving Paris?
- ***She was a guest of Duke Michael. She was leaving Paris the same time as Rudolf.***
43. Who was the Duke of Strelsau? Where did George see meet the Duke of Strelsau?
- ***He was the half-brother to the new King of Ruritania. George met him at the embassy.***
44. What did people say about the Duke of Strelsau?
- ***He was his father's favourite son. He was a very clever man.***
45. Why did the Duke of Strelsau return to Ruritania? - ***To prepare for the coronation.***
46. Why did George think the Duke of Strelsau wouldn't enjoy the coronation?
- ***He wished he were the King.***
47. Who was travelling with Rudolf on the same train? - ***Antoinette de Mauban.***
48. Why didn't Rudolf tell George about going to Ruritania? - ***The news would have gone to Bertram and then it would have been in all the newspapers within days.***
49. Who did George see at the station? What was she like? - ***George saw Antoinette de Mauban. She was a beautiful, tall and fashionably dressed woman of about thirty.***
50. Who was Rudolf looking forward to seeing/meeting on the train? - ***Antoinette de Mauban.***
51. When did Rudolf see Antoinette de Mauban again for the second time?
- ***The following day, when they got on the next train from Dresden to Ruritania.***
52. What did Rudolf think of the journey from Paris to Dresden? - ***It was long and boring.***
53. What did the officers do when the train arrived at Ruritanian borders?
- ***The guards checked the passengers' passports.***
54. How did the officers behave while checking Rudolf's papers? - ***The guards stared at him and his passport for some time because Rudolf looked exactly like the king of Ruritania.***
55. What did Rudolf find out about the coronation after reading the paper in Ruritania?
- ***He found out that the coronation was in two days' time.***
56. What did the newspaper describe? - ***The newspaper described the excitement in the country. It said all the hotels were full with people in Strelsau.***
57. Why did Rudolf decide to stop at Zenda?
- ***Because all the hotels were full of people. He also wanted to walk in the hills and see the famous castle.***
58. How did Rudolf change / modify his plan about his journey to Ruritania?
- ***He decided it would be best to stop at Zenda because all the hotels were full of people. He also wanted to walk in the hills and see the famous castle.***
59. How far was Zenda?
- ***It was a small town eighty kilometres from the capital, and about ten kilometres from the border***
60. Where did Rudolf stay during his stay in Zenda?
- ***He stayed in an inn which was run by an old woman with her two daughters.***
61. Why was Duke Michael more popular than King Rudolf?
- ***People knew Duke Michael. He always lived in Ruritania and he cared about the people, so people liked him. Prince Rudolf spent most of his life abroad.***
62. The Duke of Strelsau was nearer / closer to people than Prince Rudolf. Explain
- ***People knew Duke Michael. He always lived in Ruritania and he cared about the people. Rudolf had been abroad for most of his life and not many people even know what he looks like.***
63. Who did the inn keeper prefer to be the next / future king? Why? - ***The hotel owner wished the Duke was the new King because he always lived in Ruritania and he cared about the people.***
64. Where was the king staying two days before the coronation?
- ***In a hunting lodge in the forest, very near to Zenda.***

65. Why did Rudolf decide to walk in the forest of Zenda? - ***To see the king.***
66. What thing did the king love best? - ***He loved hunting and good food.***
67. Why was the king at the Duke's land near Zenda? - ***For hunting.***
68. Why didn't the Duke of Strelsau have the right to be a king?
- ***Because he had an older brother and the Duke's mother wasn't royal.***
69. How did Johann behave on seeing Rudolf for the first time? How do you explain this?
- ***He took off his hat and stepped back in surprise because Rassendyll was exactly like the king.***
70. Why was it impossible for the two brothers to be friends?
- ***Because each of them would like to be King.***
71. How did one of the daughters explain Johann's amazement \ astonishment on seeing Rudolf?
- ***It was because of his red hair. They didn't often see it unless one was part of the the Elphbergs.***
72. What did Johann offer Rudolf when he knew he would go to Strelsau?
- ***He said Rudolf could stay at his sister's house.***
73. Why do you think Rudolf accepted Johann's offer to stay at his sister's?
- ***Because all hotels in Strelsau were full.***
74. Why did Johann contact his sister in Strelsau?
- ***To tell her that Rudolf would stay at her house during the coronation.***
75. Why do you think Rudolf decided to walk through the forest? - ***Because he wanted to see the King.***
76. How did Rudolf decide to go to Strelsau, the capital, from Zenda?
- ***He planned to walk for sixteen kilometres through the forest to the next station along the line, where he could catch a train to the capital***
77. Why didn't Rudolf tell Johann about his plan to walk through the forest of Zenda?
- ***As he did not think it would be important if he arrived at Johann's sister's house later in the day. Rudolf didn't like telling people where he went.***
78. Where did Rudolf go after saying goodbye to the old lady and her daughters?
- ***Towards the castle.***
79. What was the castle like? - ***It was very old but well built, with a moat all around it. Behind it was a large modern mansion. The mansion was reached by a wide road, but the old castle could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion.***
80. How could the castle be reached? - ***By a drawbridge between it and the mansion.***
81. How was the castle well-defended? - ***The castle was up the hill. . It was well built, with a moat all around it. It could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion.***
82. Why was it called the dark forest? - ***Because not much sun reached the ground through leaves.***
83. Why was Rudolf relaxed while walking in the forest? - ***Because the tall trees gave him cool shade: not much sun reached the ground through many leaves. It was a beautiful place.***
84. Why did Rudolf rest against an enormous tree? - ***Because he was tired after walking in the forest.***
85. What helped Rudolf to fall asleep quickly? - ***It was so quiet and peaceful in the forest.***
86. What was Rudolf dreaming about while he was sleeping in the forest?
- ***Rudolf was just dreaming about living in the Castle of Zenda.***
87. Who did Rudolf see in the forest when he woke up? - ***He saw Colonel Sapt and Fritz.***
88. Why were Colonel Sapt, and Fritz surprised on seeing Rudolf in the forest?
- ***Because He looked just like the King.***
89. "I later found out that my guesses were both correct." What did Rudolf guess and he was right?
- ***That one of the two men he saw in the forest was a soldier and the other was a gentleman.***
90. How did Rudolf introduce himself to Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim? - ***He said he was Rudolf Rassendyll.. He was a traveller from England and was an officer in the Queen's army.***
91. Did Colonel Sapt know the Rassendylls? - ***Yes, he did.***
92. How far was Rudolf Rassendyll different from the king?
Although they looked like identical twins, they didn't have identical personalities or skills. Rassendyll was good with a sword. The king preferred eating to action
93. How did both the king and Rudolf behave when they first met at the forest? Why?
- ***Rudolf gave out a loud cry at the same time as the king stood back in amazement.***

Quotations

1. "..... you're 29 years old. Are you ever going to do anything useful?"
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - b) What was the relation between these two persons? - **Rose was Rudolf's sister-in-law.**
 - c) What did the speaker mean by "do anything useful"? - **getting a job instead of being idle.**
2. "Why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rudolf to Rose.**
 - b) What else did the speaker enjoy that made him unwilling غير راغب to work?
- **He enjoyed an important position in society.**
 - c) What do the speaker's words reveal تكشف about his / her personality?
- **He was a lazy person who liked to have an easy life.**
3. "And I enjoy an important position in society."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rudolf to Rose.**
 - b) What important position did the speaker mean?
- **His brother was Lord Buresdon and his sister in law was a countess.**
 - c) What did that important position make the speaker not want to do? - **It made him do nothing.**
4. "But you've done nothing except..."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - b) What sort of people was the addressee? - **He was a lazy person who preferred easy life.**
 - c) What was the exception? - **Being lazy.**
5. "It's true. I'm a member of the Rassendyll family and our family don't need to do things."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rudolf, to Rose.**
 - b) What did the speaker admit that it was true? - **That he did nothing except being lazy.**
 - c) What was the effect of these words on the other person? Why?
- **They annoyed Rose, because her family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls.**
6. "She's angry because she thinks I don't do anything,"
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rudolf to Robert.**
 - b) Who was she? - **Rose.**
 - c) What was her opinion of Rudolf? - **She thought he was lazy.**
7. "It's not just your red hair that makes you different from your brother."
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - b) When did the addressed person's family start to have members with red hair? - **In 1733.**
 - c) According to the speaker, what another difference was there between the two brothers?
- **Robert realised that his position in society had responsibilities, but Rudolf only saw opportunities in his position.**
8. "He also realises his position in society has responsibilities. You only see opportunities in yours."
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - b) Who was the speaker comparing the addressed person with? - **His brother Robert.**
 - c) What was the addressed person's reply to these words?
- **He said that to a man like him, opportunities are responsibilities.**
9. "To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities."
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rudolf to Rose.**
 - b) Why did the speaker say so?
- **Because Rose told him that he sees opportunities in his responsibilities.**
 - c) What did the speaker mean by, "a man like me"? - **He meant that he was not an ordinary man.**
10. "Good, because I have some news for you. Sir Jacob Borrodaile tells me he'll offer you a real opportunity."
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - b) What opportunity would Sir Jacob offer to the addressed person?
- **He would offer that Rudolf could work for him in an embassy.**
 - c) Did the addressed person accept that offer? Why / Why not?
- **Yes, Rudolf accepted the offer because the job sounded interesting and for Rose's sake.**

11. "He's going to be an ambassador in six months' time, and he says he's happy for you to work for him."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - Who was going to be an ambassador? - **Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**
 - What was the addressed person's reply to that offer? Why?
- **Rudolf accepted the offer because the job sounded interesting and for Rose's sake.**
12. "I hope you'll take this job,"
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf.**
 - What job was offered to the addressed person?
- **Rudolf could work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile in an embassy.**
 - Why did the speaker say so? - **Because she thought that he didn't do anything useful.**
13. "If in six months' time I'm in a position to take this job, then I'll certainly say yes."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rudolf to Rose.**
 - What job would the speaker accept? - **With Sir Jacob Borrodaile in an embassy.**
 - What relation was the speaker to the addressed person? - **She was his sister - in- law.**
14. "Oh, Rudolf, how good of you!"
- Who said these words? - **Rose.**
 - What did the speaker praise **امتحت** Rudolf for? - **For accepting Sir Jacob's offer to work for him.**
 - Why was the speaker angry with Rudolf a few minutes earlier?
- **Because he was jobless and he didn't do anything useful.**
15. "Where will he be working?"
- Who asked this question? To whom? - **Rudolf to Rose.**
 - Who does the pronoun "he" refer to? - **Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**
16. "Sir Jacob doesn't know which country it will be, but he's sure it'll be a good embassy."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose to Rudolf.**
 - What was the addressed person going to do in that embassy?
- **He was going to work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**
 - What was the addressed person's comment when he heard this?
- **He said that he would accept the job.**
17. "You are going to write a book? That would be a good thing to do."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rose, to Rudolf and her husband Robert.**
 - Did that person really intend to write a book? If not, why did he claim so?
- **No, he didn't. He claimed so because he didn't want Rose to think he was being lazy.**
 - What was the claimed **المزعوم** book about? - **It was about the social problems in the Alps.**
18. "Yes, indeed. Writing a book's the best way to get into politics."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Robert, to his wife Rose.**
 - Why should the speaker know this well? - **Because he had written many books himself.**
 - On what occasion **مناسبة** did the speaker say so?
- **When his brother, Rudolf, told them he was going to write a book.**
19. "We've had quite a few important people visiting the city recently."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Bertram Bertrand, to Rudolf Rassendyll.**
 - Which city was he referring to? - **Paris.**
20. "You've probably heard of her. She's a lady who's well known for her wealth and ambition. But she's leaving Paris today; we don't know where she's going to next."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Bertram Bertrand, to Rudolf Rassendyll.**
 - Who was that lady? - **Antoinette du Mauban.**
 - Why did that lady go to Paris? What was her next destination?
- **She was a guest of the Duke Michael. She was going to Ruritania.**
21. "So why did she come to Paris?"
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rudolf Rassendyll to Bertram Bertrand.**
 - Who was "she"? - **Antoinette du Mauban.**
 - What was she well known for? - **For her wealth and ambition.**
22. "I met him at the embassy yesterday."

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***George Featherly to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Who did the speaker meet at the embassy? What did he say about that person?
 - ***He met the Duke Michael. He said that he was the half-brother of the King of Ruritania. He was his father's favourite son. George thought the Duke wished he were the King.***
 c) What was the speaker's job? - ***He worked at the English embassy in Paris.***
23. "He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania. People say he was his father's favourite son."
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***George Featherly, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Who was the speaker talking about? - ***The Duke of Strelsau.***
 c) Where did that person go after that? Why? - ***He's gone back to Ruritania for the coronation.***
24. "He probably wishes he were the King. I don't think he likes being a Duke."
 a) Who said this? To whom? - ***George Featherly, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Which Duke were they talking about? - ***Duke Michael.***
 c) In which city did this conversation take place? - ***In Paris.***
25. "I hear he's a clever man, though,"
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Bertram Bertrand, to Rassendyll and George Featherly.***
 b) Who was the speaker talking about? - ***The Duke of Strelsau.***
 c) What was the speaker's job? - ***He was a famous journalist in the city.***
26. "You have an important person to travel with."
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***George Featherly, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Who was that important person? - ***Antoinette du Mauban.***
 c) What was the destination of both the persons who were travelling? - ***Dresden.***
27. "He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people."
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The hotel owner, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Who was the speaker talking about? - ***Duke Michael.***
 c) What was the result of that person's caring about the people?
 - ***Many people liked him and wished he was the new King and not his brother.***
28. "As for the King, well, he's almost a stranger."
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The hotel owner, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Who was that king? - ***Rudolph Elphberge.***
 c) Why was the king almost a stranger? - ***Because He'd been abroad for most of his life.***
29. "Now the King's staying in a hunting lodge in the forest."
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The hotel owner, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) How did the addressed person feel on hearing this? What did he decide then?
 - ***He was very interested. He decided to walk in the forest the next day so that he might see the King.***
 c) Why did the King go there? - ***Because Duke Michael had invited him.***
30. "I wish he'd stay there in the forest. People say he only likes hunting and good food."
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The hotel owner, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Why did the speaker not like the person she was talking about? - ***Because had been abroad for most of his life and not many people even knew what he looked like.***
 c) What else did the person wish that person to do?
 - ***To stay in the forest and let the Duke become their King.***
31. "Well I don't like Duke Michael."
 a) Who said this? To whom? - ***The older daughter of the inn owner to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
 b) Why did the speaker say so? - ***Because Michael didn't have red hair.***
 c) How did one of the listeners have a different opinion of Duke Michael?
 - ***He said that many men had red hair like him.***
32. "Many men have red hair like me"
 a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll to the older daughter of the inn owner.***
 b) Why did the speaker say so? - ***Because Michael didn't have red hair.***
 c) Who were famous for their red hair in Ruritania? - ***The elphberges.***
33. "How do you know the King has red hair?"
 a) Who said this? To whom? - ***The old woman asked her daughter.***
 b) Who had red hair? - ***The new king of Ruritania.***

- c) How did the speaker know that? - **Johann told her.**
34. "Johann, the Duke's servant, told me,"
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **The older daughter of the inn owner to her mother.**
- b) What did Johan tell her? - **Johann, the Duke's servant told her.**
35. "But why's the King here, if it's the Duke's land?"
- a) Who asked this question? To whom? - **Rudolf Rassendyll, to the hotel owner.**
- b) What answer did the speaker get to his question? - **The Duke had invited the King to go there.**
- c) Where was the Duke at the time of this conversation? - **in Strelsau.**
36. "The Duke invited him, sir. The Duke's in Strelsau, preparing for the coronation."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **The hotel owner, to Rudolf Rassendyll.**
- b) Who was invited? For what? - **The new king of Ruritania was invited to hunt in his brother's land.**
37. "So they are good friends?"
- a) Who asked this question? To whom? - **Rudolf Rassendyll, to the hotel owner.**
- b) Who are "They"? - **Duke Michael and the new king of Ruritania.**
- c) Do you think they were good friends? Why? - **No, because each one wanted to be the king.**
38. "I don't know if you can be good friends if you want the same thing."
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **The hotel owner to Rudolf Rassendyll.**
- b) What did the speaker mean by these words?
- **Both the King and the Duke wanted to be the King of Ruritania, so they could not be friends.**
- c) According to the addressed person, who had the right to الحق في that thing? - **The older brother.**
39. "Duke Michael would like to be King, too, I'm sure."
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **The hotel owner to Rudolf Rassendyll.**
- b) Who has the right to be the king? - **Rudolf Elphberge.**
40. "I feel quite sorry for the Duke, but it's right that the older brother becomes king."
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rudolf Rassendyll, to the hotel owner.**
- b) What was the problem about who would be King?
- **Both Rudolf Elpheberge and Michael wanted to be the king.**
- c) Who did the addressed person sympathize with? Why?
- **He sympathised with Rudolf Elpheberge because he was the older brother.**
41. "Who's talking of the Duke?"
- a) Who said this? - **Johann.**
- b) Who was talking about the Duke? - **Rudolf Rassendyll, the hotel owner and her daughters.**
- c) What was the job of the speaker? - **He was a servant of the Duke.**
42. "We have a guest, Johann,"
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **The hotel owner.** b) Who was the guest? - **Rudolf Rassendyll**
- c) How did Johan feel when he saw the guest? Why?
- **He took off his hat and stepped back in surprise because Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.**
43. "What's the matter, Johann? This gentleman's come to our country to see the coronation."
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **The hotel owner.**
- b) What was the matter with Johann? - **He was surprised.**
- c) Why did Johan feel surprised? - **Because Rudolf Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.**
44. "It's the red hair. We don't often see it in our country unless you're part of the King's family, the Elphbergs."
- a) Who was speaking? - **One of the old woman's daughters.**
- b) What did the speaker mean by "It's the red hair"?
- **She meant that Johann was amazed when he saw Rassendyll's red hair.**
45. "Good evening, sir. I'm sorry; I didn't expect to see any new guests here."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Johann, to Rudolf Rassendyll.**
- b) What did the speaker apologize for? - **For staring at Rassendyll in surprise.**
- c) What didn't the speaker really expect? - **To see a man who looked exactly like the King.**
46. "Don't worry. It's late and time I went to bed. I wish you all a good night. Thank you, ladies, for our conversation"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rudolf Rassendyll to Johan, the hotel owner and her daughters.**

- b) What made one of the addressees worried? - ***Because Rudolf Rassendyll looked like the King.***
47. "Sir, have you ever seen our King?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Johann, to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
- b) What was the other person's answer to this question?
- ***He said he didn't see the king but he expects to see him in the coronation.***
- c) Why did the speaker ask this question?
- ***Because Rudolf Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.***
48. "No, I've never seen him, but I hope to do so on Wednesday at the coronation."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll to Johann.***
- b) Who were they talking about? - ***The king of Ruritania.***
- c) Where did the speaker first see this person? - ***In the forest.***
49. "Why look at him! It's amazing! He looks just like the King!"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz to Colonel Sapt.***
- b) Who were they talking about? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll.***
- c) Where did the speaker see this person? - ***He was lying against a tree in the forest.***
50. "He's about the same height as the King, too. This really is extraordinary. What's your name, sir?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz von Tarlenheim to Colonel Sapt.***
- b) Who was about the same height as the King? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll.***
- c) What were they doing at that place? - ***They were hunting with the king of Ruritania.***
51. "Perhaps you can tell me what your names are first?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll to Fritz.***
- b) Why were these people amazed? - ***Because Rassendyll looked exactly like the king.***
- c) Where did this conversation take place? - ***In the forest.***
52. "I'm a traveller from England and was an officer in the Queen's army."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll to Fritz and Sapt***
- b) Why did that person travel from England? - ***To attend the coronation of the king of Ruritania.***
- c) What did the other persons say on knowing that the speaker was an officer?
- ***They said that he was different from the king in that point.***
53. "Well, we're officers for our King, so we understand each other well!"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz to Rassendyll.***
- b) What did the addressed person say that made the speaker make this remark?
- ***Rassendyll said that he was an officer in the Queen's army.***
54. "Rassendyll, Rassendyll. I know! Are you one of the Burlesdons?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt Rudolf Rassendyll.***
- b) Who were the Burlesdons? - ***They were an important family in London.***
- c) Where did this conversation take place? - ***In the forest, near the Castle of Zenda.***
55. "My brother's the new Lord Burlesdon. So, do I really look like the King?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll to Fritz and Sapt***
- c) Where did the addressed person come from? - ***London.***
56. "You could be twins,"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz to Rassendyll.***
- b) Who do the pronoun "you" refer to? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll and the king of Ruritania.***
- c) Why do you think they were so alike? - ***Because they were relatives.***
57. "Although you look like identical twins, you do not have identical personalities or skills. You two seem very different. If you were an officer for the Queen's army, Rassendyll, you must be good with a sword!"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) Who looked like identical twins? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll and the king of Ruritania.***
- c) According to the speaker, how were the skills of these two persons different?
- ***Rassendyll was an officer for the Queen's army. He was good with a sword. The King liked to live well. He preferred eating to action.***
58. "Is the King not a fighting man?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rudolf Rassendyll to Fritz von Tarlenheim and Colonel Sapt***
- b) Who was that king? - ***Rudolf Elphberg, the king of Ruritania.***
- c) What kind of person was the king of Ruritania?

- The King liked to live well. He preferred eating to action.

59. "The King likes to live well. Let's say he prefers eating to action, but he's a kind man and he's our King. We'd do anything for him."

a) Who said these words? To whom? **-Fritz to Rassendyll.**

b) Who was that king? **- Rudolf Elphberg, the king of Ruritania.**

c) How were the skills of the king different from those of Rassendyll? **- Rassendyll was an officer for the Queen's army. He was good with a sword. The King liked to live well. He preferred eating to action.**

60. "Perhaps we are alike then, because I like to have an easy life, too!"

a) Who said these words? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Fritz and Colonel Sapt.**

b) Who did the speaker mean by "we"? **- Rassendyll and the king of Ruritania.**

c) To what extent were these two persons similar in appearance?

- They were the same except for a centimeter or two in height.

61. "Fritz? Where are you, Fritz?"

a) Who said these words? **- Rudolf Elphberg, the king of Ruritania.**

b) Where was Fritz then? **- He was talking to Rudolf Rassendyll.**

c) Where did this conversation take place? **- In the forest, near the Castle of Zenda.**

62. "It's the King! He's coming here now."

a) Who said these words? To whom? **- Fritz to Rudolf Rassendyll.**

b) Where were they then? **- In the forest, near the Castle of Zenda.**

c) What happened when Rudolf Rassendyll and the king of Ruritania first met?

- Rassendyll gave out a loud cry. The king of Ruritania stood back in amazement.

Mistake Correction

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- Rassendyll studied at a French school and a French university.
- 2- Rassendyll didn't know how to speak any languages except English and German.
- 3- Rassendyll was neither good with a sword nor with a gun.
- 4- In 1733, Countess Rose married a member of the Ruritanian royal family.
- 5- Lord Burlesdon had paintings of Countess Amelia Rassendyll and her ancestors.
- 6- Rassendyll read that Rudolf the Fourth was to become King of Ruritania.
- 7- George was Rassendyll's old friend who was a famous journalist in Paris.
- 8- People said that the King of Ruritania was his father's favourite son.
- 9- Rassendyll told George Featherly about his visit to Ruritania.
- 10- As Rassendyll got off the train, he saw Antoinette who got off at Zenda, too.
- 11- The hotel owner loved the King as he always lived in Ruritania and cared about the people.
- 12- Te old woman's daughter said that a few number of the Elphbergs had red hair.
- 13- Rassendyll told Johann that he had seen the King of Ruritania before.
- 14- Rassendyll asked Johann if he could let him stay at Johann's sister's house.
- 15- The old castle was only reached by a tunnel between it and the mansion.
- 16- Rassendyll was annoyed to see that the Duke had a well-defended house.
- 17- Rassendyll couldn't sleep well in the forest as it was noisy and terrifying.
- 18- Colonel Sapt said that Rassendyll and the King were identical in appearance, personalities and skills.
- 19- Fritz said that the King liked to live well and he preferred action to eating.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?
- Because he belongs to a rich important family and doesn't need to work.
2. What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?
- She wants him to take a job in an embassy, working for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.
3. Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?
- Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Elphberg family many years ago. Many of her descendants look like the royal family of Ruritania (the Elphbergs). Rudolf looks like an Elphberg.
4. Where does Rassendyll decide to travel to? What does he tell his family about his plans?

- *He travels to Ruritania to see the coronation of the new king. He doesn't tell his family that. He says he is going to go walking in the Alps and write a book about social problems in the country.*

5. What does the owner of the inn think of Michael Duke of Strelsau?

- *She thinks he should be the King because the real King only likes hunting and good food.*

6. Why does Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?

- *He wants to see the forest where the King is staying.*

7. Who does Rassendyll meet in the forest? Why are they surprised to see him?

- *He meets Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim, and then the King. They are surprised because he looks almost exactly like the King.*

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. Rudolf is Lord Burlesdon. (F) - *His brother Robert is Lord Burlesdon.*

2. Rudolf speaks German as well as he speaks English. (T)

3. Many members of the Ruritanian royal family have red hair. (T)

4. George Featherly works at the embassy in Ruritania. (F)

- *He works at the embassy in Paris, France.*

5. The Duke of Strelsau is said to be a clever man. (T)

6. Rudolf sits with Antoinette on the train. (F)

- *They are on the same train but do not see or speak with each other.*

7. Duke Michael has always lived in Ruritania. (T)

8. A moat goes around the Duke's mansion and his castle. (F)

- *The moat is only around the castle, not the mansion.*

9. Colonel Sapt recognises the name of Rassendyll. (F)

- *Colonel Sapt recognises the name of Rassendyll.*

10. Rassendyll and the King look almost exactly alike. (T)

C. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

1- "To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities.

1. Who says this and when? - *Rudolf Rassendyll says this while he is eating breakfast.*

2. What does the person mean by this?

- *He means that if an opportunity comes, he takes it but he doesn't look for work or responsibilities.*

3. Do you think a person like this is very serious about work or life? - *No, I don't think so.*

2- "He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him."

1. Who says this to whom? - *The innkeeper (inn owner) says this to Rassendyll.*

2. Who is the person talking about? - *She's talking about Duke Michael, the Duke of Strelsau.*

3. What more does the speaker think about the person? - *She wishes that he would be the King.*

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

1- According to Rose, Rudolf and Robert were different not only in appearance but also in personality. Discuss.

2- According to the old woman (the hotel owner), what did many Ruritanian people wish concerning **بخصوص** the new king?

3- Although Rassendyll and Rose belonged to the same upper class, Rose was offended by his words. Discuss.

4- How did Rudolf Rassendyll have a tendency **ميل / نزعة** to be lazy?

5- How did the Castle of Zenda have sufficient defences against any attack?

6- What did Bertram Bertrand tell Rassendyll about Antoinette du Mauban?

7- What did Rassendyll guess about the two men who woke him in the forest?

8- What did Rassendyll plan to do in the six months before the new job would start?

9- What did Rassendyll tell Rose about taking the job even if it were in a terrible embassy?

10- What did Rassendyll, Colonel Sapt and Fritz have in common?

11- What did Robert tell his brother Rudolf about writing a book?

12- What did Rose complain about concerning her brother-in-law, Rudolf?

13- What did Uncle William always say about visiting Paris?

14- What do you know about Rassendyll's education?

15- What favour did Johann offer to do Rassendyll? Why was Rassendyll very happy to have that opportunity?

- 16- What helped Rassendyll's decision to visit Ruritania after he had read The Times newspaper?
- 17- What made Rassendyll claim that he was going to write a book about social problems in the country?
- 18- What old relationship was there between the Rassendylls and the Elphbergs?
- 19- What real opportunity would Sir Jacob Borrodaile offer to Rassendyll?
- 20- What skills did Rassendyll have?
- 21- What was Rassendyll dreaming about when a voice woke him in the forest?
- 22- Who did George Featherly meet at the embassy in Paris? What did he tell Rassendyll about him?
- 23- Who did Rassendyll call on when he went to Paris?
- 24- Who was the important person that travelled in the same train with Rassendyll? What did she look like?
- 25- Why did Rassendyll accept Sir Jacob Borrodaile's offer to work for him? Give two reasons.
- 26- Why did Rassendyll decide he wanted to see the forest?
- 27- Why did Rassendyll decide to stop at Zenda on his way to Ruritania?
- 28- Why did Rassendyll fall into a deep sleep in the forest?
- 29- Why did Rassendyll not like to tell Rose that he was going to Ruritania?
- 30- Why did the hotel owner love Duke Michael more than his brother?
- 31- Why did the King of Ruritania go to the Duke's land? Where was the King staying there?
- 32- Why was Rassendyll pleased when he saw the Castle of Zenda?
- 33- Why was Rassendyll surprised when the guards checked his passport at the Ruritanian border?
- 34- Why was there not much sun on the ground of the forest?

Quotations

1- "You're 29 years old,". "Are you ever going to do anything useful?"

1-Who said this? To whom? 2-Why did the listener think he didn't need to do any work?

3- What work opportunity did the speaker get to the listen

2-why should I do anything?

1- Who said this to whom? When was it said? 2- What was the speaker's job?

3- Why did the speaker think he didn't have to work?

3- But you've done nothing except..."

1- Who said this to whom? 2- What did the speaker want to say but didn't complete?

3- How did the addressed person annoy the speaker?

4- "Fritz? Where are you, Fritz?"

1- Who said this? How many people were that at that time? 2- Where were the characters?

3-How would the speaker feel on seeing Rudolf? Why? What were they doing at that place?

5-Perhaps we are alike then," "because I like to have an easy life, too!

1- Who said this? To whom was it said? 2- Who does "we" refer to?

3- How were they alike? How were they different?

6- Perhaps you can tell me what your names are first?"

1- Who said this to whom? Where were they? 2- What was said and that was the reply?

3- How did the addressed feel on seeing the speaker? Why?

7- "It's the red hair," . "We don't often see it in our country unless you're part of the King's family, the Elphbergs. Many of them have red hair.

1- Who said this to whom? Where? 2- Why was the speaker at that place at the moment?

3- What did the speaker try to explain?

-Sir, have you ever seen our King?"

1- Who said this to whom? Where? 2- What was the answer to this question?

3- Where did the speaker see the king for the first time? How did he feel on seeing him?

9-"But why's the King here, if it's the Duke's land?"

1- Who said this to whom? Where? 2- What does "here" mean? Why was the king doing there?

3-who was the Duke? What was the relation between the king and the Duke?

10- She was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau,"

1- Who said this to whom was it said? 2- Where were the speaker and the listeners?

3- What does the pronoun "she " refer to ? Who did she meet there? Where did she go after that?

11-" I met him at the embassy yesterday. He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania. People say he was his father's favourite son. He's gone back for the coronation, although I don't think

12- he'll enjoy it very much because he probably wishes he were the King. I don't think he likes being only a Duke."

- 1- Who said this? To whom was it said?
- 2- Who was the speaker talking about? What was his ambition?
- 3- Why did the speaker think he wouldn't enjoy the coronation?

13- Robert, I'm so happy you're back!" cried Rose.

- 1- Who was the speaker? Where was she?
- 2- Why was she happy that Robert came back? Who was Robert?
- 3- How do you explain the state she was in?

14- "You're going to write a book?"

- 1- Who said this? To whom? Where was it said?
- 2- Was the addressed person really going to write a book?
- 3- Why did the addressed person allege that he would write a book? What did the addressed person want to prove by saying that?

15- To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities

- 1- Who said this to whom was it said?
- 2- What did the speaker mean by 'To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities'?
- 3- What opportunity was offered to him?

16- "I wish he'd stay there in the forest,". "People say he only likes hunting and good food. He should let the Duke become our King. And there are many others who think the same."

- 1- who said this? To whom was it said? Who was the speaker talking about?
- 2- Did the speaker like that person? Why? Why not?
- 3- Who did the speaker like to be a king? Why?

17- "To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities. "

1. Who says this and when? 2. What does the person mean by this?
3. Do you think a person like this is very serious about work or life?

18- "He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him. "

1. Who says this to whom? 2. Who is the person talking about?
3. What more does the speaker think about the person?

Mistake Correction

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- Rose praised Rudolf Rassendyll for doing many useful things.
- 2- Rassendyll enjoyed an important position in society: his brother was the Duke of Strelsau and his sister-in-law was a countess.
- 3- Rose's family were richer and more important than the Rassendylls.
- 4- Rassendyll refused Sir Jacob Borrodaile's offer to work for him as he was lazy.
- 5- Rassendyll decided to do nothing and relax during the six months before his new job would start.
- 6- Rassendyll told Rose he was going walking in the Alps as he didn't want her to think he was being lazy.
- 7- Rose and Robert discouraged Rassendyll from writing a book.
- 8- Uncle William always said that no man should ever pass Dresden without spending twenty-four hours in the city.
- 9- Rassendyll saw Antoinette du Mauban in the dining car on the train to Dresden.
- 10- In Ruritania, Rassendyll read in the newspaper that the King's coronation was to be in three weeks' time.
- 11- Zenda was a small town 10 km from Strelsau and 80 km from the border.
- 12- The old woman and her two daughters liked Duke Michael.
- 13- Duke Michael didn't want to be King, so he went to Strelsau to prepare for his brother's coronation.
- 14- Rassendyll sympathized with Duke Michael and said it was his right to be king.
- 15- Johann's sister was married to a wealthy craftsman.
- 16- The castle was modern and well built, with a moat all around.
- 17- Behind the castle was a mansion, which was used by the Duke as a hunting lodge.
- 18- Tarlenheim was short, tough with light blue eyes. He looked like a soldier.
- 19- Rudolf told Colonel Sapt and Fritz that he was an officer in the King's army.

Chapter 2

amount	كمية	Have no choice	ليس لديه بديل آخر	pick ... up	يلتقط
bend – bent	ينحني (يميل لأسفل)	hungrily	بنهم / بشراهة	Poison	يسم / السم
bow	ينحني (للتحية)	not made of stone	أنا بشر من لحم ودم	proud smile	ابتسامة بكبرياء
breathe heavily	يتنفس بصعوبة	in silence	صامتاً / بصمت	ride	يمتطي الخيل
can't help	لا مفر من	it will do	يفي بالغرض	Send word to...	يرسل تنبيهاً لـ ...
cellar	قبو (حجرة تحت الأرض)	lay out a table	يُعد مائدة	show... into / to	يرافق (شخص) إلى
cheer	يهتف / يهلل	lined the streets	اصطفوا في الشوارع	stick	يعلق / يغرز / يثبت
clapping	يصفقون	locked in	محبوس / محتجز في	still	مع ذلك / رغم ذلك
coloured ribbons	شرائط ملونة	make the most of	يستغل	support	يساند / يقف إلى جانب
crown	التاج / يتوج	make up	يشكل	surprised-looking	تبدو عليه الدهشة
delicious	لذيذ الطعم / شهى	marshal	مارشال (المشير)	the poor King	الملك المسكين
delighted	مسرور / مبتهج	meanwhile	في غضون ذلك	throw	يلقي / يرمي
double	شبيه / مثل	medals	أنواط / أوسمة	ticked	أصدرت تكاتها
excitedly	بحماس / بانفعال	nervous	قلق / متوتر	tiny	صغيرة جداً
expression	تعبير الوجه	Nevertheless	مع ذلك	under ...	خلال عهد ...
feel one's pulse	يجس نبض شخص	now and then	بين الحين والآخر	wake ... up	يوقظ / يفيق من غيبوبة
flags	أعلام / رايات	palace	قصر	watch	يراقب
forgive	يسامح	palace	قصر	wave to	يلوح بيده لـ
formally	بلهجة رسمية	partly	جزئياً	weaknesses	نقاط الضعف
freezing cold	قارص البرودة	patiently	بصبر / بتفهم	what the Duke is like	شخصية الدوق
generous	وافر / كريم	personal	شخصي	you know	كما تعلم

Questions & Answers

- How did Rassendyll feel when he saw the king for the first time in the forest?
- **He was surprised. It was a strange feeling.**
- Who told the King about who Rassendyll was? - **Sapt**
- What did both the king and Rassendyll do while Sapt was telling the king about Rassendyll?
- **The king was staring at Rudolf now and then. Rudolf examined the King carefully.**
- What did Rassendyll find out when he examined the King carefully? - **The king's mouth was less wide and Rassendyll's face was a little thinner. The king was about one or two centimeter taller.**
- What differences in shape did Rudolf notice about the King? - **The king's mouth was less wide and Rassendyll's face was a little thinner. The king was about one or two centimeter taller.**
- What did the king do after Sapt stopped talking? - **The king began to laugh loudly.**
- "You must forgive me" why did the King ask Rudolf to forgive him?
- **As he was surprised because they were exactly the same in shape.**
- "I hope you're not angry," what did the Rudolf think the King might be angry about?
- **He might be angry that Rudolf was exactly like him.**
- What reason did he king give for not being angry that Rudolf was like the king?
- **Rudolf couldn't help looking like him.**
- Where did Rudolf tell the king he was going? Why? - **To Strelsau to attend the coronation.**
- Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau?
- **Because people might mistake Rassendyll for the king.**
- How does the King react to Fritz's suggestion? - **The king was surprised.**
- Show that the king was generous.
- **He told Mr Rassendyll that he didn't need to go then and he must eat with him that night.**
- What showed that the king liked good food?
- **He thought that good food was more important than sleep. He ate a lot of food and most of the cake.**
- Where was the king staying in the forest of Zenda? - **In a hunting lodge.**

16. How did the King's brother entertain him well?
- ***He allowed him to stay in his hunting lodge. He provided him with a lot of good food and cakes .***
17. Who was Josef? - ***He was the personal servant of the king.***
18. What made Mr Rassendyll eat a lot of food? - ***He was hungry and the food was delicious.***
19. Why didn't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? - ***Because they had to get up early the next morning.***
20. What advice do Fritz and Sapt give the King? Did he listen to them?
- ***They advised him not to eat much and sleep early. He didn't listen to them.***
21. When did Colonel Sapt and Fritz have to leave? Was it before or after the king?
- ***They had to leave at six in morning the next day before the king.***
22. Why did Colonel Sapt and Fritz have to leave so early in the morning?
- ***Because they had to ride to Zenda and return with a guard of soldiers to take the king to the station.***
23. Why was the King rather annoyed with Colonel Sapt and Fritz?
- ***Because they wanted him to leave good food and sleep early.***
24. Why was the king pleased with his brother in the hunting lodge?
- ***He let him use his guards. He prepared good food for him and made him good cake as dessert.***
25. "Well done, Michael! He knows me well!" How does Michael know the king well?
- ***He knew that he loved good food so he brought delicious food and good cake.***
26. Why was Mr Rassendyll angry when Colonel Sapt awakened him?
- ***Because Colonel had thrown water over him.***
27. Why was Colonel Sapt forced to throw water over Mr Rassendyll?
- ***Because it was five in the morning and he was fast asleep.***
28. How were Colonel Sapt and Fritz in the morning? Why? - ***They were extremely worried about the king. The King was lying on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily.***
29. What was wrong with the king in the morning? - ***The King was lying on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily. His pulse was very weak and slow.***
30. "You must come and look at this" what did Fritz want to show Rassendyll?
- ***He wanted to show him the King lying on the floor.***
31. "We must get a doctor." Why was it necessary to get a doctor?
- ***To help the king as he was poisoned.***
32. Why was it difficult to get a doctor at that time? - ***There was no doctor for fifteen kilometres .***
33. What did Fritz think they should do about the coronation? What was Sapt's opinion?
- ***Fritz thought they had to tell the people of Ruritania that the king was ill. Sapt didn't like this idea because if the king was not crowned that day, he wouldn't ever be King.***
34. Why wouldn't it be a good idea if the king didn't go to the coronation that day? - ***The whole country was waiting for him that day. Most of the army was waiting too, with Duke Michael leading it.***
35. What did they think happened to the king? Who did they think did that? - ***They thought the king was poisoned by Duke Michael.***
36. Who would benefit from the king's poisoning\ death? How?
- ***It was the Duke as he would take the crown and be the king.***
37. What idea came to Colonel Sapt to make the coronation successful?
- ***He persuaded Rassendyll to replace the king in the coronation.***
38. Did Mr Rassendyll like the idea of replacing the king at first? Why? Why not?
39. - ***No, he didn't like the idea at first because People would realise that he was not the King.***
40. How did Colonel Sapt persuade Rassendyll to accept the mission\ task?
- ***He told him that his German was perfect. And if they dressed Mr Rassendyll in different clothes, no one would know. If Mr Rassendyll didn't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael would be King, and the King would either be dead or in prison.***
41. What would happen if Mr Rassendyll didn't accept the task\ mission?
- ***Duke Michael would be King that night, and the King would either be dead or in prison.***
42. What plan did Colonel Sapt make before leaving for the coronation?
- ***They would leave for Strelsau at once. They would hide the King in the cellar.***
43. What was the mistake they made before they left the hunting lodge?
- ***They left the king in the cellar of the hunting lodge.***
44. Who did they leave with the king?

- *They left Josef the personal servant of the king and the mother of Johann.*
45. How would they get the King to Strelsau after the coronation?
- *Rassendyll would sleep in the king's room in the palace As soon as they were alone in the King's bedroom, Rassendyll and Sapt would leave and go back on their horses. Sapt told Josef to get the King ready for the journey back. The King would then return to the palace with Sapt in the dark. Rassendyll would ride as fast as he could to the borders and leave the country before it was light.*
46. What did Fritz think of colonel Sapt's plan? - *It was a good plan.*
47. Is Rassendyll also poisoned? Why isn't he as sick as the King?
- *No, he isn't poisoned because he didn't eat much cake.*
48. Do you think Rassendyll has a choice? Is there something else they can do?
- *No, I don't think he had a choice.*
49. Where did they keep the king? Who was watching and hearing them?
- *In the cellar. Johann's mother was watching and hearing them.*
50. Who dressed Mr Rassendyll in some of the king's clothes? - *Josef.*
51. What happened to Johann's mother? - *She was tied and locked in the cellar with the King.*
52. How did Colonel Sapt prepare Mr Rassendyll for his new job? - *Sapt told Rassendyll the history of the King's life: of his family, likes, interests, weaknesses, friends and servants. He told him how he would behave in the palace and said he would always be at his side to tell him who the people were that he met.*
53. How did Fritz justify the king's sudden arrival at the station?
- *Fritz told the station guard that the King had changed his plans.*
54. How was Mr Rassendyll feeling on the way to the capital? How did Sapt relieve him?
- *He was nervous. Sapt told him he would be fine.*
55. What is the first thing they did when they had reached the capital?
- *They went to the station restaurant where Rassendyll ate his breakfast.*
56. Why weren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them?
- *Because they were an hour earlier than expected.*
57. What was it like at the station when the king arrived?
- *Everything was suddenly busy: men ran up to them, and then ran away again. Soldiers rode off on horses. Other men showed them to the station restaurant.*
58. Who was Marshal Strakencz? - *He was a very important person in the army.*
59. Why did Marshal Strakencz apologise for the Duke when he met the king?
- *Because the Duke couldn't meet THE KING at the station.*
60. When did Mr Rassendyll feel less nervous on the way from the station to the palace?
- *When no one seemed to realise that he was not the real King.*
61. What was the capital like? = The capital cit was divided into two parts. Explain
- *The city was partly old and partly new. In the new part, there were wide, modern streets where the rich people lived in big houses. But behind the modern streets was a very different area that made up the old town. Here thousands of people were crowded into tiny houses.*
62. Who supported the king? Why?
- *The rich people supported the king because they knew that nothing would change.*
63. Who opposed the king? Why? - *The poor people because they did not want things to stay the same.*
64. Why did the poor people support the Duke? - *Because he gave them hope for a better future.*
65. Which area was not safe for the King? - *The poor area of the town.*
66. How did people celebrate the king's arrival in the capital?
- *There were coloured flags and colourful ribbons everywhere. People lined the streets, clapping and cheering. they threw flowers down from the balconies.*
67. What thing did the king "Mr Rassendyll" do and didn't appeal to the Marshal?
- *When one flower fell on his horse, he picked it up and stuck it onto his coat.*
68. At what point did Mr Rassendyll first feel he was actually the king?
- *When he looked at Marshal Strakencz and became sure he didn't realize that he was not the real king.*
69. Who was Mr Rassendyll surprised to see on a balcony? How did she feel on seeing him?
- *He was surprised to see Antoinette de Mauban. When she stared at him, her expression changed.*
70. Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban?
- *Because he was afraid she would recognize him.*

Quotations

1. "Colonel, Fritz: who is this gentleman?"
 - a) Who said this? Who was he asking about? - ***The King of Ruritania was asking about Rassendyll.***
 - b) Why did the speaker and the gentleman stand for a few minutes looking at each other in silence? - ***Because they looked exactly like each other.***
 - c) What did that gentleman find out when he examined the speaker carefully? - ***He found out some differences between them: the King's mouth was less wide and his own face was a little thinner.***
2. "You must forgive me if I seemed surprised, as it's not every day that you see your double!"
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***The King of Ruritania, to Rassendyll.***
 - b) What did the speaker mean by "your double"? - ***He meant a person who looked exactly like you.***
 - c) What were the differences in appearance between the speaker and his double?
- ***The King's mouth was less wide and Rassendyll's face was a little thinner.***
3. "I hope you're not angry."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Rassendyll, to the King.***
 - b) Why did the speaker think the other person could be angry?
- ***Because he looked exactly like him.***
 - c) What did the addressed person say that the speaker couldn't help doing? - ***looking like him.***
4. "Whether I like it or not, you can't help looking like me. No, I'll happily help you."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***The King to Rassendyll.***
 - b) Who really helped the other, the speaker or the addressed person? How?
- ***Rassendyll helped the King by taking his place in the coronation.***
5. "To Strelsau, sir. To the coronation."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the King.***
 - b) What is Strelsau? - ***It is the capital of Ruritania.***
 - c) Who was supposed to be crowned? - ***Rudolf Elphberg.***
6. "What would my brother Michael think if he saw us two together!"
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***The King, to Sapt and Fritz.***
 - b) Who does the pronoun "us" refer to? - ***The King and Rassendyll.***
 - c) What was the reply of the addressed persons to these words?
- ***They said it was not a good idea for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau at the time of the coronation.***
7. "I don't think it would be a good idea for Mr Rassendyll to visit Strelsau now."
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz to the King.***
 - b) Why did the speaker think it wasn't a good idea for Rassendyll to do so?
- ***Because it wouldn't be nice for the people to see a double of their King.***
 - c) Why did the speaker have to change his opinion hours later?
- ***Because the King was poisoned and if he wasn't crowned that day, his brother Michael would take the crown. So Rassendyll was asked to take the King's place.***
8. "I agree. He mustn't go."
 - a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to the king.***
 - b) Who were they talking about? Where mustn't he go?
- ***They were talking about Russendyll. He mustn't go to Strelsau.***
 - c) Did the speaker change his opinion later? Why?
- ***Yes, Rassendyll was asked to take the King's place because the King was poisoned.***
9. "Don't worry, sir. I understand the problem. I'll leave Ruritania today."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the King.***
 - b) What problem was the speaker talking about? - ***The problem was that Rassendyll and the King looked exactly like each other. So, Sapt and Fritz objected to Rassendyll's attending the coronation.***
 - c) Did the speaker leave Ruritania that day? Why / Why not?
- ***No, because Sapt and Fritz asked him to take the King's place because the King was poisoned..***
10. "You don't need to go now! Please, first you must eat with me tonight."
 - a) Who said this? To whom? - ***The King to Rassendyll.***
 - b) Which place did the speaker ask the other person not to go to? - ***Out of Ruritania to England.***

- c) What happened to the speaker when he ate that night? - ***He was poisoned.***
11. "Remember, sir, that we have an early start tomorrow."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to the King.***
 b) What did the addressed person want to do that made the speaker say so?
 - ***He wanted to have dinner and invited Rassendyll to eat with him.***
 c) What was addressed person's reply?
 - ***He said they could eat well, and good food is more important than sleep.***
12. "We can still eat well, and good food is more important than sleep."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The King to Sapt.***
 b) Why did the addressed person try to advice the speaker not to eat then?
 - ***Because they had to get up early to return to Strelsau.***
 c) What do these words show about the speaker's character? - ***He liked food very much.***
13. "The same as yours"
- a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Rassendyll, to the King.***
 b) What did he mean by this? - ***He meant that his first name was Rudolf like the king.***
 c) Was this the only thing they had in common? - ***No, they also looked exactly the same.***
14. "I don't have a house here, but I'm staying in the place my brother Michael uses for hunting. It's not the palace that I'm used to, but it will do for a few days."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The King, to Rassendyll.***
 b) What place was the speaker talking about? - ***The hunting lodge.***
 c) Why did the speaker go to that place? - ***Because Duke Michael had invited him.***
15. "Is dinner ready yet, Josef?"
- a) Who said these words? - ***The King.***
 b) Who was Joseph? - ***The King's personal servant.***
 c) What happened to the speaker when he ate that dinner? - ***He was poisoned.***
16. "The Colonel and I have to leave here at six tomorrow morning."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz to Rassendyll.***
 b) What does the word "here" refer to? - ***The hunting lodge in the forest.***
 c) Why did the speaker say they would leave that place at six the next day?
 - ***To ride to Zenda and return with the guards to take the King to the station.***
17. "We ride to Zenda and return with a guard of soldiers to take the King to the station."
- a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Fritz to Rassendyll.***
 b) Who does the pronoun "We" refer to? - ***Fritz and Sapt.***
 c) Did they do what the speaker said? Why / Why not?
 - ***No, because the king was poisoned and they changed their plans.***
18. "It's very good of my brother to let me use his guards,"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***The King to Rassendyll, Fritz and Sapt.***
 b) Who was his brother? - ***Duke Michael.***
 c) Was his drother really good? How do you know?
 - ***No, he wasn't. His brother poisoned him to take his crown..***
19. "But Rudolf, forget these two men! We don't need to get up so early, so eat some more, cousin!"
- a) Who said these words? - ***The King.***
 b) Who were these two men that the speaker asked Rudolf to forget? - ***Fritz and Sapt.***
 c) What did the speaker mean by "forget these two men"? - ***He meant that he and Rassendyll didn't have to get up as early as Sapt and Fritz, so they could eat as much as they could.***
20. "The Duke said I was to give you this at the end of your meal."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Josef to the King.***
 b) What does the word "this" refer to? - ***The cakes.***
 c) What was the reaction of the addressed person then? Why?
 - ***He was very happy and praised his brother Duke Michael because the King liked good food.***
21. "Well done, Michael! He knows me well!"
- a) What did the King praise Michael for? - ***He praised him for sending him some cakes.***
 b) What did the King mean by "He knows me well"?
 - ***He meant that Michael knew that the King liked good food.***

c) Did Michael deserve استحق the King's praise? (ثناء) Why / Why not?

- **No, because he wanted to poison the King to take the crown.**

22. "That wasn't funny."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) Why did the speaker say so? - **Because Sapt had thrown water over him to wake him up.**

c) Did the other person intend to do something funny? Why / Why not?

- **No. He intended to wake Rassendyll up to see what happened to the King.**

23. "Nothing else would wake you up."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Colonel Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) What did the speaker do to wake the other person up? - **He threw water over him.**

c) Why was it difficult to wake that person up? Mention two reasons. - **First, he had eaten some poisoned cake which had a little effect on him. Second, it was five o'clock in the morning.**

24. "Rassendyll, you must come and look at this."

a) Who was addressing Rassendyll? - **Fritz.**

b) What did the speaker want Rassendyll to look at?

- **He wanted him to look at the King lying on the floor.**

c) What was the problem then? What caused that problem?

- **The King was poisoned. He had eaten the poisoned cakes that Michael sent him.**

25. "We've been trying to wake him up for half an hour, but we can't."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**

b) Who were they talking about? - **The king of Ruritania.**

c) Why couldn't they wake him up? - **Because he was poisoned.**

26. "It must've been those cakes that he ate last night! Do you think he was poisoned?"

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rassendyll, to Fritz and Sapt.**

b) Who were they talking about? How did he get those cakes?

- **The King. Duke Michael had sent those cakes to him.**

c) What was wrong with those cakes? - **They were poisoned.**

27. "We don't know. We must get a doctor."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) What didn't they know then? - **They didn't know if the King was poisoned or not.**

c) Did they get a doctor? Why / Why not? - **No, they didn't. There was no doctor for fifteen kilometres and even a thousand doctors won't make him better that day.**

28. "There's no doctor for fifteen kilometres and even a thousand doctors won't make him better today."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.**

b) Who does the word "him" refer to? What was wrong with him? - **The King. He was poisoned.**

c) Why did they want that person to be better that day in particular? - **For the coronation.**

29. "But what about the coronation?"

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Fritz and Sapt.**

b) Whose coronation was it? - **Rudolf Elphberg.**

c) What was the problem with the coronation? - **The King was poisoned and couldn't attend it.**

30. "We must tell the people of Ruritania that he's ill."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.**

b) Who was ill then? Why was he ill? - **The King. He was poisoned.**

c) Who objected to the speaker's idea? Why?

- **Sapt said that if the King was not crowned that day, he would never be King.**

31. "If he's not crowned today, I don't think he'll ever be King."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.**

b) Why did the speaker think so? - **Because the whole country was waiting for the King that day. Most of the army was waiting too, with Duke Michael leading it. They wouldn't be happy.**

c) What prevented the King from being crowned that day? - **He was poisoned.**

32. "The whole country's waiting for him today. Most of the army is waiting too, with Duke Michael leading it."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.**

- b) Who was that country waiting for? Why? - **The new king. It was his coronation.**
 C) According to the speaker, what would happen if that person didn't arrive on the scene?
 - **If the king was not crowned today, Duke Michael would take the crown.**

33. "We must tell everyone what's happened and make the most of it."

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.**
 b) What did the speaker want to announce in public? - **Poisoning the king.**
 c) Who didn't approve of **يوافق** that idea? Why?
 - **Sapt. If Rudolf didn't become King, Duke Michael would take the crown.**

34. "Do you think that he was poisoned?"

- a) Who said this? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 b) Who were they talking about? Why did they think that he was poisoned?
 - **The King was poisoned. He was lying on the floor and breathing heavily.**
 c) Who did they doubt to be the schemer **المتآمر**? - **Duke Michael.**

35. "Then who did it?"

- a) Who said this? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 b) Who did what? - **Duke Michael poisoned the King.**
 c) How did he do that? - **He sent him some poisoned cakes.**

36. "It must have been Duke Michael!"

- a) Who said this? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.**
 b) What did the speaker charge **اتهم** Duke Michael with? - **He charged him with poisoning the King.**
 c) Why was Duke Michael the main suspect?
 - **Because he was the only person who could benefit from poisoning the King. He sent the poisoned cakes.**

37. "Yes, he did this so that his brother cannot be crowned."

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.**
 b) Who was the schemer? - **Duke Michael.**
 c) What did he do to stop the King from being crowned?
 - **He poisoned the King by sending poisoned cakes to him.**

38. "You don't know what the Duke is like, do you, Rassendyll?"

- a) Who said these words? - **Sapt.**
 b) What did the speaker mean by these words?
 - **He meant that Michael who was a criminal who could do anything to take the crown.**
 c) What did the speaker suggest to frustrate the Duke's treacherous plot?
 - **Colonel Sapt suggested that Rassendyll replace the King at the coronation.**

39. "I have an idea! It was lucky that we met you yesterday."

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 b) What was that idea? - **Rassendyll could replace the king at the coronation.**
 c) Why did the addressed person object to that idea at first?
 - **Because he was afraid that people would realize he was not the king. Besides, he was English.**

40. "Me? That's impossible! People would realise that I'm not the King! And don't forget that I'm English!"

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rassendyll, to Colonel Sapt.**
 b) What did the speaker object to? **He objected to going to Strelsau to be crowned.**
 c) Why did the speaker change his mind later on? - **First, Fritz told him that his German was perfect. Second, he sympathized with the poor King. He felt he had no choice.**

41. "It would be easy to forget that, because your German's perfect. And if we dress you in different clothes, no one will know."

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
 b) What was the speaker trying to persuade the other person to do?
 - **To replace the king in the coronation.**
 c) What did the addressed person decide at last? Why?
 - **He decided to accept the task. Fritz told him that his German was perfect. He sympathized with the poor King who was lying on the floor and he felt he had no choice.**

42. "If you don't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael will be King tonight, and the King will either be dead or in prison,"

- a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

- b) Why should the addressed person go to Strelsau? - ***To replace the king in the coronation.***
 c) What was the matter with the King? - ***He was poisoned.***
43. "I understand what you're saying, but the King would never forgive me if I ..."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
 b) What was the other person saying that the speaker understood?
 - ***Colonel Sapt said that if Rassendyll didn't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael would be King that night, and the King would either be dead or in prison.***
 c) What, do you think, was the sentence that the speaker didn't finish?
 - ***I think it was, "But the King would never forgive me if I was crowned and took his place."***
44. "Our country needs this!"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
 b) What did the speaker mean by these words? - ***He meant that Ruritania needed Rassendyll's help and that the King wouldn't be angry with him if he took his place temporarily.***
 c) What did the listener decide at last? - ***To go to Strelsau to be crowned instead of the King.***
45. "Very well, I'll go."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
 b) Where will the speaker go? - ***Strelsau.***
 c) Why will the speaker go there? - ***To replace the king in the coronation.***
46. "We won't wait for Michael's guards but leave for Strelsau at once."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll and Fritz.***
 b) Why would these people go to Strelsau?
 - ***Because Rassendyll was going to replace the king in the coronation.***
 c) Why, do you think, wouldn't they wait for Michael's guards? - ***They suspected Michael and his men. They also had to move quickly before Michael discovered their plan.***
47. "We can hide the King in the cellar so when the guards arrive they'll think no one's here."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll and Fritz.***
 b) Why didn't they want the guards to know the King's hiding place?
 - ***To stop them from discovering their plan or hurting the king.***
 c) Where were they going next? Why?
 - ***To Strelsau because Rassendyll would replace the king in the coronation.***
48. "What if they search the building?"
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Fritz to Sapt.***
 b) Who would search the building? - ***The Duke's men.***
 b) Which building did the speaker mean? - ***The hunting Lodge.***
49. "Josef will say the hunting lodge is empty. This is our only chance."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.***
 b) To whom would Josef say the hunting lodge was empty? - ***To Michael's guards.***
 c) What did the speaker mean by "This is our only chance"?
 - ***He meant that they had to hide the King in the cellar and go to Strelsau so that Rassendyll could be crowned before their plan was discovered.***
50. "How will we get the King to Strelsau?"
- a) Who asked this question? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
 b) Where was the King at that time? - ***He was lying on the floor.***
 c) What was the plan of getting the King to Strelsau that they all agreed on?
 - ***That night, Rassendyll would sleep in the king's room in the palace As soon as they were alone in the King's bedroom, Rassendyll and Colonel Sapt would leave and go back on their horses. Colonel Sapt told Josef to get the King ready for the journey back. The King would then return to the palace with the king in the dark. Meanwhile, Rassendyll would ride as fast as he could to the borders and try to leave the country before it was light.***
51. "As soon as we are alone in the King's bedroom, you and I will leave and come back here on our horses."
- a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
 b) What does "here" refer to? Why would they go back to that place?
 - ***The hunting lodge. They would go back to take the real King to the palace.***

c) Who else were included in that plan? What role would they play? - **Fritz would stay and guard the King's bedroom in the palace. Josef would get the King ready for the journey back.**

52. "Meanwhile, you will ride as fast as you can to the border and try to leave the country before it's light."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) Which country would he leave? Where would he go?

- **He would leave Ruritania and go back to England.**

c) What service would that person render to the speaker's country before leaving?

- **He would take the King's place and be crowned. Thus, he would keep the crown from being taken illegally by Duke Michael.**

53. "Do we all agree on this plan?"

a) Who asked this question? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.**

b) Write briefly **ببإيجاز** what that plan was. - **Rassendyll would replace the king in the coronation.**

After that, Sapt and Rassendyll would go back to the hunting lodge. Fritz would guard the King's bedroom. The King and Sapt would return to the palace and Rassendyll would leave the country.

c) What was the listeners' opinion of that plan?

- **They agreed on it. Fritz said that it was a good plan.**

54. "It's a good plan,"

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.**

b) What was that plan? - **Rassendyll would replace the king in the coronation. After that, Sapt and Rassendyll would go back to the hunting lodge. Fritz would guard the King's bedroom. The King and Sapt would return to the palace and Rassendyll would leave the country.**

55. "I think she heard us. After we've moved the King, I'll speak to her."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.**

b) Who was he talking about? - **Johann's mother.**

c) What did they do with her? Why? - **They locked her in the cellar because she overheard their plan and she would tell Duke Michael about the King's hiding place.**

56. "You know, I think we can do this."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.**

b) What can they do? - **They can succeed in replacing the king with Rassendyll in the Coronation.**

57. "What happened to Johann's mother?"

a) Who asked this question? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Fritz.**

b) What happened to Johann's mother? - **She was tied and locked in the cellar with the king.**

c) What was worrying them about her? - **She overheard their plan and might tell the Duke.**

58. "She's locked in the cellar with the King. Josef will let her out later, after Michael's gone."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**

b) Who was locked in the cellar with the King? - **Johann's mother.**

c) Why was she locked there? - **Because she overheard their plan and would tell the Duke.**

59. "But I'm sure, when they find that the King is not here, Michael will realise we know about his plan."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**

b) What did the speaker mean by the word "here"? - **The hunting Lodge.**

c) What was Michael's plan that the speaker referred to? - **He poisoned the king to stop him from attending the coronation. Then he would kill or imprison him and take the crown.**

60. "Is all safe here?"

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Fritz to Sapt.**

b) What did the speaker mean by the word "here"? - **The hunting Lodge.**

c) What was the listener's reply? - **He said that nothing was safe anywhere.**

61. "No, nothing's safe anywhere, but we must do our best."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt, to Fritz.**

b) Why did the speaker feel that nowhere was safe? - **There was a feeling of betrayal (treachery) **الخيانة** everywhere after Duke Michael had betrayed the King and poisoned him.**

62. "Nervous, I'm not made of stone, you know."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rassendyll, to Sapt.**

b) Why did the speaker feel nervous? - **Because he pretended to be the King of Ruritania. He was afraid that people would discover his real identity.**

c) When did the speaker begin to feel less nervous?

- **When no one seemed to realise that he was not the real king.**

63. "You'll be fine. But we are an hour earlier than they expect, so there'll be no one to meet us. We must send word to the palace. So meanwhile ..."

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) Why did they arrive an hour earlier? - **Because they left the lodge before their plan was known.**

c) Why did the speaker tell the other person "You'll be fine"?

- **Because Rassendyll was afraid that people would realise that he was not the real king.**

64. "Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast! The King is hungry!"

a) Who said these words? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) Who was that king? - **Rudolf Rassendyll.**

c) What did these words show about the king's character? - **He liked good food.**

65. "Let's hope we're all alive tonight."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) Why did the speaker hope so? - **Because they were playing a dangerous game. Rassendyll took the King's place and would be crowned instead of him.**

c) Why was that day in particular very important? - **It was the day of the King's coronation.**

66. "God save the King!"

a) Who gave that cheering? Where? - **Some Ruritanian people at the station of Strelsau.**

b) Why was there such cheering? - **People were cheering in preparation for the coronation.**

c) Did the real King hear such cheering? Why / Why not?

- **No, because he was hidden in the cellar of the hunting lodge.**

67. "God save both Kings."

a) Who made this wish? - **Sapt.**

b) Were there really two kings in that place? Explain why.

- **Yes. There was a real king, Rudolf Elphberg. There was a false king, Rudolf Rassendyll who took the king's place in the coronation because the real king was poisoned.**

c) According to the speaker, why were "both Kings" in danger?

- **The real king was in danger because he was poisoned and his brother wanted to take his crown. The false king would be in danger if the plan was discovered.**

68. "That is Marshal Strakencz."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Sapt, to Rassendyll.**

b) Was the speaker introducing Marshal Strakencz and the addressed person to each other? Why / Why not? - **No, because Rassendyll was playing the part of the King who was supposed to know the Marshal. Colonel Sapt wanted Rassendyll to know who he was.**

c) What did Marshal Strakencz say to the addressed person shortly after that?

- **He said he was sorry that the Duke could not meet him at the station.**

69. "That is not the real King!"

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rassendyll to himself.**

b) Who did Rassendyll think would cry out and say so? - **Antoinette de Mauban.**

c) Where did Rassendyll see that person for the first time? - **He saw her at the station in Paris.**

d) Why was he sure that this person would call out and expose **تفضح أمره** him?

- **Because when she stared at him, her expression changed.**

Mistake Correction

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1-Although they could get a doctor easily, they decided not to do because even a thousand doctors wouldn't make the King better that day.

2-As Rassendyll was riding he saw that the capital was all new.

3-Behind the modern streets was a very different area where thousands of people lived in big houses which were new with mild weather in the summer and winter.

4-Colonel Sapt and Fritz ate hungrily because they didn't need to get up early the following day.

5-Colonel Sapt and Fritz didn't find any difficulty in waking Rassendyll up because the cake he ate had no effect on him.

- 6-Colonel Sapt and Fritz hid the King in the kitchen so when the guards arrived they would think no one was there.
- 7-Colonel Sapt and Fritz said they didn't mind having dinner with Rassendyll and the King because they didn't have to get up early the next day.
- 8-Colonel Sapt and Fritz told the King it would be a good idea for Mr Rassendyll to visit Strelsau.
- 9-Colonel Sapt and Fritz woke Rassendyll up at five o'clock in the morning to go to Strelsau to be crowned.
- 10- Colonel Sapt couldn't know whether Rassendyll would agree to their idea to be crowned or not until Rassendyll said, "Very well. I'll go."
- 11- Colonel Sapt said that the whole country was waiting for the King that day. Most of the army was waiting too, with Marshal Strakencz leading it.
- 12- Colonel Sapt told Rassendyll how he should behave in the palace, but said he couldn't be at his side to tell him who the people he met were.
- 13- Colonel Sapt was worried that if Rudolf didn't become King that day, Rassendyll would take the crown.
- 14- Colonel Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll found some people from the palace waiting for them at the station because they arrived just on time.
- 15- Colonel Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll realised that they were being watched by Josef, so they locked him in the cellar with the King.
- 16- Dinner was not ready yet when the King, Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz went to the hunting lodge, so they ate some cakes.
- 17- Fritz encouraged Rassendyll to take the King's place saying that his English was perfect.
- 18- Fritz said that he and Sapt would be waiting for a guard of soldiers from Zenda to take the King to the station.
- 19- Fritz said that they mustn't tell anyone that the King was ill, and Sapt agreed.
- 20- In the big square, people lined the streets, clapping and cheering. He waved to them as they passed and people threw stones down from the balconies above him.
- 21- Josef said that Duke Michael had asked him to give the King some fruit at the end of his meal.
- 22- Marshal Strakencz, a very important person in the police, welcomed Rassendyll at the station.
- 23- Rassendyll agreed at once to Colonel Sapt's idea to go to Strelsau to be crowned.
- 24- Rassendyll bent down and felt the King's pulse, which was normal.
- 25- Rassendyll knew that he was safe in the poor area as they liked the King.
- 26- Rassendyll rode through the capital with the Marshal on his right and Fritz on his left.
- 27- Rassendyll saw that Fritz was less nervous when he shook the Marshal's hands.
- 28- Rassendyll talked to Marshal Strakencz politely and in a friendly way.
- 29- Rassendyll walked round the room in silence for about an hour thinking of Colonel Sapt's idea that he could go to Strelsau to be crowned.
- 30- Rassendyll woke up suddenly covered in water because he had sweated عرقاً heavily.
- 31- Rudolf Rassendyll and the King looked exactly like each other with no difference at all in appearance.
- 32- Sapt said that if Rassendyll didn't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael would be King that night, and the King would either be dead or exiled. يتم نفيه
- 33- Sapt suggested waiting for Michael's guards in the hunting lodge and then they could leave together to Strelsau.
- 34- Sapt's plan was that they could sleep in the hunting lodge until they could take the King to the palace.
- 35- The King agreed with Colonel Sapt and Fritz in that sleep was more important than good food.
- 36- The King as well as Rassendyll ate a few cakes because they had eaten enough.
- 37- The King asked Rassendyll to forgive him because he seemed annoyed when he saw his double.
- 38- The King asked Rassendyll to leave Ruritania that day, but Rassendyll asked to stay for dinner.
- 39- The King thought that the hunting lodge was as comfortable as the palace.
- 40- The King was annoyed with his brother for not letting him use his guards.
- 41- The King's mouth was wider than Rassendyll's and Rassendyll's face was a little thinner.
- 42- The poor people supported Duke Michael, who told them he wanted things to be different and gave them some cakes.
- 43- The rich people had never lived well under the King's father, so they would support the King because they knew that nothing would change.
- 44- They decided to lock Johann's mother in the cellar with no intention to let her out once again.

- 45- To frustrate the Duke's plans, Colonel Sapt suggested that Rassendyll could go to Strelsau to kill Duke Michael.
- 46- When a flower fell on Rassendyll's horse and he picked it up and stuck it onto his coat, he could at once tell from the Marshal's expression that he was angry.
- 47- When Colonel Sapt asked Rassendyll how he was feeling, he answered that he was very confident as he got used to such situations.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau? How does the King react to Fritz's suggestion, and what does that tell you about the King?
- *Perhaps Fritz thinks there will be problems with someone who looks so much like the King. The King seems surprised by the suggestion (He says, "What?") and asks Sapt what he thinks. Perhaps it means that the King is not very wise, or that he depends too much on other people for advice.*
2. Why don't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? What advice do they give the King? Does he listen to them? - *They don't want to overeat because they have to get up early the next day. They advise the King not to eat too much. He doesn't listen to them.*
3. What happens at the end of the meal? What is the result the next day? - *The servant brings some cakes from the Duke. The King eats a lot of them and is poisoned. He can't be woken up the next day.*
4. Why does the Duke poison the King?
- *He hopes that the King will miss the coronation and that he (the Duke) will become the King instead.*
5. Is Rassendyll also poisoned? Why isn't he as sick as the King?
- *Yes, but he didn't eat much poisoned cake.*
6. Rassendyll tells himself that he has no choice but to pretend to be the King. Do you think he has a choice? Is there something else they can do?
- *He is probably also poisoned because they have to throw water in his face to wake him up. But he ate only one cake, so he didn't eat as much poison. The King eats more, so he receives more poison.*
7. How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?
- *They will hide the King in the cellar of the lodge. At night, after the coronation, Sapt and Rassendyll will come back and get the King. Sapt will take him back to the palace, and Rassendyll will leave the country.*
8. Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?
- *Johann's mother (who is a servant to the Duke) overhears the plan. They tie her up and lock her in the cellar with the King. Josef will let her out later.*
9. Why do they go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?
- *The Duke's guards have probably been told to kidnap or kill the King. They want to get out of the lodge and be on their way to the capital before the Duke's men come.*
10. What is the first thing they do when they reach the capital? Why aren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them? - *The first thing they do is eat breakfast at the train station. The palace people aren't there yet because the King (Rassendyll) arrived earlier than planned.*
11. Why is Rassendyll afraid when he sees Antoinette de Mauban? - *Her expression changes, so he thinks she recognises that he is not the real King. He is afraid that she will shout out and tell others.*

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. Rassendyll's face is a little different from the King's face. (T)
2. The King invites Rassendyll to eat with him in Strelsau. (F)
- *He invites him to eat with him in the hunting lodge in Zenda.*
3. Sapt and Fritz believe that Duke Michael has poisoned the King. (T)
4. Duke Michael wants to be the King. (T)
5. It is Rassendyll's idea to pretend to be the King for the coronation. (F) - *It is Sapt's idea.*
6. Michael's men will hide the King in the cellar. (F)
- *Sapt and Fritz will hide him in the cellar so Michael's men don't find him.*
7. They plan to bring the real King back to Strelsau that same night. (T)
8. Josef and Johann's mother are locked in the cellar. (F)
- *The King and Johann's mother are locked in the cellar.*
9. Marshal Strakencz realises that Rassendyll is not the King. (F) - *He does not realise it.*

10. Antoinette de Mauban calls out, "That is not the real King!" (F)

- Rassendyll is afraid that she will call out, "That is not the real King!"

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast! The King is hungry!"

1. Who says this to whom? - **Rassendyll (disguised as the King) says this to Sapt and Fritz.**

2. Where and when does he say this?

- In the train station at Strelsau. They have just arrived but they are early, so Rassendyll will eat first.

3. What does this show you about the speaker?

- He is feeling a little more relaxed and acting more like the King.

"God save both Kings."

1. Who said this and where was he? - **Sapt said this in the restaurant at the train station in Strelsau.**

2. What did the people say just before this? - **The people said, "God save the King!"**

3. Why does the speaker say "both Kings"? Who is he talking about? - **He's talking about the real King who is in the lodge at Zenda and about Rassendyll who is pretending to be the King for the coronation. He is worried about the safety of both men, the real King and the pretend King.**

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

- 1- How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?
- 2- How could Colonel Sapt solve the problem of the coronation?
- 3- How did Colonel Sapt persuade Mr Rassendyll to accept the mission\ job?
- 4- How did Mr Rassendyll see the capital?
- 5- How does the King react to Fritz's suggestion, and what does that tell you about the King?
- 6- How was the King different from Rudolf in shape?
- 7- How would they get the King to Strelsau after the coronation?
- 8- Is Rassendyll also poisoned? Why isn't he as sick as the King?
- 9- What happens at the end of the meal? What is the result the next day?
- 10- What information did Colonel Sapt tell Mr Rassendyll on their way?
- 11- What is the first thing they do when they reach the capital?
- 12- What made Mr Rassendyll eat a lot of food?
- 13- What reason did he give for not being angry that Rudolf was like the king?
- 14- What reason did he give for not being angry that Rudolf was like the king?
- 15- What was the mistake they made before they left?
- 16- What would happen if Mr Rassendyll refused to replace the king in the coronation?
- 17- Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?
- 18- Why aren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them?
- 19- Why do they go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?
- 20- Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau?
- 21- Why does the Duke poison the King?
- 22- Why is Rassendyll afraid when he sees Antoinette de Mauban?
- 23- Why was Mr Rassendyll angry with Colonel Sapt?

Quotations

1-• "Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast! The King is hungry!"

Who says this to whom? Where and when does he say this?

What does this show you about the speaker?

2-"God save both Kings."

Who said this and where was he? What did the people say just before this?

Why does the speaker say "both Kings"? Who is he talking about?

3-"Colonel, Fritz: who is this gentleman?"

Who said this? Where was he when he said these words?

Who was the gentleman the speaker was talking about?

How did the speaker feel on seeing that gentleman? Why?

4-What happened to Johann's mother?"

Who said this to whom was it said? Where were they?

What was Johann's mother? What did they do to her? Why?

5-Do we all agree on this plan?"

Who said this to whom? What plan was the speaker talking about?
What drove them to make that plan?

6-How will we get the King to Strelsau?"

Who said these words to whom? What happened to the king?
When and how would they get the king to Strelsau?

7- Me? That's impossible!". "People would realise that I'm not the King! And don't forget that I'm English!"

Who said this to whom? When was it said? What was the speaker asked to do?
Did he accept the mission or not? Why?

8-We must tell the people of Ruritania that he's ill," said Fritz.

Who said this to whom? Where were they? How did the king become ill?
What would happen if the king remained ill that day? How was the problem solved?

9- I understand what you're saying, but the King would never forgive me if I....."

Who said this to whom? What did the speaker want to say but he didn't complete?
Do you think the king would forgive him or not? Why?

10- Nothing else would wake you up. It's five o'clock

Who said this to whom? How was the person spoken to awoken up? Why?
What was wrong with the king at that time? What was he like?

11- Our country needs this

Whose country were they talking about? What did this refer to here? What does this mean?
What would happen if they didn't do this?

12-Nervous,". "I'm not made of stone, you know."

Who said this to whom was it said? Where were they? Why was the speaker nervous?
When did the speaker become less nervous and more confident?

13-It must have been Duke Michael!" Fritz said angrily

Who said this to whom? How did the speaker feel at the moment?
What did they think the Duke did? How did he do that?
Why did they think the Duke must have done it?

14- Don't worry, sir. I understand the problem," I said. "I'll leave Ruritania today."

Who said this? To who was it said? What was the problem that he understood?
Did the speaker really leave Ruritania that day? Why? Why not?
How did the king celebrate the speaker?

15- We've been trying to wake him up for half an hour, but we can't

What do the pronouns " we" " him" refer to?
Why can't they wake him up? What was wrong with him?
What did they think cause this? Who did they think did it? Why?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- At first, Mr Rassendyll liked the idea of replacing the king.
- 2- At first, Mr Rassendyll was pleased when he arrived at the station.
- 3- Both Fritz and Colonel Sapt were happy to see Mr Rassendyll for the first time.
- 4- Colonel Sapt decided to take the real king with them during the journey.
- 5- Colonel Sapt dressed Mr Rassendyll in the king's clothes.
- 6- Duke Michael was satisfied with being a Duke and never wanted to be the King
- 7- Fritz asks Rassendyll to pretend to be the King
- 8- Fritz told Mr Rassendyll not to worry because his English was good.
- 9- Johann's mother was loyal to the king so they locked in the cellar.
- 10- Johann's mother was a personal servant of the King.
- 11- Marshal Strakencz realises that Rassendyll is not the King as they met before on the train.
- 12- Michael was an important person in the army.
- 13- Michael's men will hide the King in the cellar.
- 14- Mr Rassendyll felt safe in the old part of the capital.
- 15- Mr Rassendyll wished Antoinette de Mauban would know him in the king's clothes.
- 16- Rassendyll's face is a lot different from the King's face
- 17- Sapt and Fritz believe that Josef has poisoned the King.
- 18- Strakencz pretended to be the King.
- 19- Strelsau is a place where the Duke of Strelsau has a castle.
- 20- The king was angry with his brother the Duke Michael for leaving him his servants.

Chapter 3

act	يتصرف	expect	يتوقع	princess	اميرة
alive	حي	fight	عراك	puzzle	لغز
announce	يعلن رسميا	fork	مفترق طرق / شوكة	recognise	يتعرف على
anxious	مثير للقلق	form	استمارة	relieved	مرتاح
appreciate	يقدر قيمة	golden crown	تاج ذهبي	ride	يركب
briefly	بأختصار	kidnap	يختطف	route	طريق
candle	شمعة	loyal	مخلص – موالى	shoot	يطلق النار
cheeks	خدود	nevertheless	مع ذلك/ بالرغم من	sign	يوقع على
city gates	بوابات المدينة	out of sight	بعيد عن النظر	signature	التوقيع
coach	عربة تجرها الخيول	panel	لوحة	skin	الجلد
compared to	مقارنة بـ	passage	ممر	surprised	مندهش
depend on	يعتمد على	permit	يسمح بـ	torn	ممزق
eventually	فى النهاية	placed	وضع فى مكان	trap	فخ – مصيدة
exhausted	مرهق	popular	محبوب	trust	يثق

Questions & Answers

1. What did Mr Rassendyll expect to hear while riding through the streets of Strelsau towards the palace? - **He expected hear Antoinette de Mauban tell everyone that he was not really the King.**
2. Why was Mr Rassendyll comforted\ relieved while walking thorough the streets?
- **Because Neither Antoinette de Mauban nor anybody else seemed to recognize him.**
3. How did Marshal Strakencz test Mr Rassendyll's courage? - **He gave an order to his men to enter a poor part of the town where the people were loyal to Duke Michael.**
4. Why was it dangerous for Mr Rassendyll to go into the poor area?
- **Because people there were loyal to Duke Michael.**
5. Why did Mr Rassendyll doubt the Marshal's intention?
- **Because he changed their route and walked through a poor area which supported the Duke.**
6. Was Mr Rassendyll satisfied with changing their planned route? Why? Why not?
- **No, he wasn't satisfied because the people in the poor area supported the Duke.**
7. Why did Mr Rassendyll insist on walking through the poor area alone?
- **Because he wanted the people who lived there to see that their King trusted them. He wanted to act like a king. He wanted to prove to the Marshal that he wasn't afraid of his people.**
8. Did Sapt like the idea of Mr Rassendyll walking through the area alone? How do you know?
- **No, he thought it was a very bad idea. He shook his head to him.**
9. How did both the Marshal and Sapt feel on hearing Mr Rassendyll's order?
- **The Marshal looked surprised. Sapt's face looked more anxious.**
10. Why was Sapt worried when Rassendyll went through the street of the old part?
- **Because Rssendyll might have been killed. If so, Sapt's position would have been difficult.**
11. When did Mr Rassendyll realise how hard life was for the poor people?
- **When he walked through the streets and saw how bad their buildings were**
12. When did Rassendyll realise how much the poor people like the Duke?
- **When he walked through the streets and saw the Duke's pictures hanging in their window.**
13. How did the people in the poor area behave while the king was walking through the street?
- **First people talked quietly, but then Rassendyll started to hear cheering. Some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at him angrily.**
14. What did Rassendyll see while he walking through the streets of the poor area?
- **He saw the poor people, their old buildings and many paintings of the Duke in their windows.**
15. How did Sapt feel after Mr Rassendyll crossed the street of the poor area safely?
- **He was relieved, comforted and happy.**

16. What was Princess Flavia like? - *She was a beautiful young woman with red hair.*
17. Who attended the ceremony of coronation?
- *There were many people at the coronation, as well as Princess Flavia and Duke Michael.*
18. What was Duke Michael like? - *He was a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair.*
19. How did the Duke feel on seeing Mr Rassendyll?
- *His face became white. He was astonished to see him.*
20. What did Rassendyll remember about the coronation? - *He remembered the golden crown being placed on his head. He remembered the promises he was asked to read out, and the beautiful music that played when someone announced that Rudolf the Fifth was now King of Ruritania.*
21. How did Duke Michael greet\ congratulate the king?
- *His hands shook with anger. He congratulated the king coldly.*
22. Why was Mr Rassendyll comforted after the coronation?
- *No one, not even the Princess, seemed to realise that he was not the real King.*
23. Mr Rassendyll was born to be a king. Explain.
- *Mr Rassendyll stood in the palace for an hour, as if he had always been a king, greeting the many ambassadors and important people who came to see him.*
24. What made Mr Rassendyll become worried after the coronation?
- *He became worried when a man England, Lord Topham, came to greet him.*
25. Why didn't Lord Topham recognise Mr Rassendyll although he was English?
- *His eyes were so poor.*
26. After greeting the attendants, what did Rassendyll do?
- *He went in a coach around the streets with princess Flavia.*
27. What did Princess Flavia notice about the king?
- *He looked more tired and serious. He was thinner.*
28. How did the king surprise Princess Flavia on the day of coronation?
- *He rode through the old town alone. He was more serious.*
29. What was the king's walk's effect on the People in the poor area? - *The people there must have appreciated what he did. They began to love the king because he cared for and trusted them.*
30. Why do you think Rassendyll behave in such a way? = What did Mr Rassendyll hope?
- *He hoped he would make a good king.*
31. What did Mr Rassendyll think about while he was sitting down at his table?
- *He was thinking about the real king. He wondered about where he was and what he was doing.*
32. At what point did Mr Rassendyll remember the real king?
- *While he was inside the palace sitting at his own table with Duke Michael, Fritz and Sapt.*
33. How did Mr Rassendyll feel at the end of the coronation day? - *He was exhausted.*
34. How did Fritz and Sapt feel at the end of the coronation day? Why?
- *They were very happy because their plan was a great success.*
35. Why did Fritz think it wasn't a good idea to walk through the street of the poor area?
- *Because it was not safe for him because people there didn't like the king. Besides, Duke Michael wouldn't like it if the king became too popular with his people.*
36. What was Fritz' wish? - *He would be a king for one day.*
37. What must Mr Rassendyll get to leave the city? From whom?
- *He had to get a permit from the king.*
38. Why did Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city? - *Because the city was at coronation and all the gates to the city were locked. No one was allowed to leave or enter unless he had a permit*
39. How did they get a permit from the King? - *Sapt copied the king's signature on a form.*
40. How would Fritz stop other people from disturbing the king? - *He would tell everyone that the king had gone to bed and he was not to be woken by anybody until nine o'clock the next day morning.*
41. What must Fritz do if Duke Michael tried to visit the king that night?
- *He mustn't let him in, even if his life depended on it.*
42. How did Mr Rassendyll disguise while going out of the palace?
- *He put on a big coat and a hat. The hat covered his face and hair. He tried to stay low on the horse.*
43. Why didn't anybody see neither Sapt nor Mr Rassendyll while going out of the palace?
- *Because they followed a secret passage.*

44. Who was waiting for Mr Rassendyll and Sapt outside the palace gardens?
- **A man with two horses.**
45. What did Mr Rassendyll and Sapt do when they got the horses?
- **They climbed onto the horses and rode away.**
46. Why did nobody notice that Rassendyll left the palace?
- **The town was busy and full of noise, and they took the quiet back streets. Rassendyll's coat and hat covered his face and hair. He tried to stay low on the horse so no one would recognise him.**
47. Why did Sapt ask Rassendyll to take his gun with him?
- **Because he might need it to get through the city gates.**
48. What did the girl who was guarding the gate tell Sapt about her father?
- **That he had gone to see the king.**
49. When did the girl open the gate to Sapt and Rassendyll?
- **When he showed her a signed form from the king, the girl gave him the key.**
50. Why did Rassendyll think there was little danger? - **Because everyone at the city was celebrating the coronation. Hardly anyone knew anything about their plan.**
51. How did they lose time on their way to the hunting lodge?
- **They stopped at an inn so that their horses could have a drink.**
52. What could Sapt hear while they were on their way to the hunting lodge?
- **He could hear the noise of horses coming towards them.**
53. How did Sapt feel when he heard the noise of horses coming towards them? Why?
- **Sapt was very worried because someone knew about their plan. This meant that the king was in danger.**
54. Why could Sapt and Mr Rassendyll hear the men on the horses following them?
- **They were lucky that the wind was blowing towards them so Sapt and Rassendyll could hear them**
55. Why did Rassendyll and Sapt set off fast at first? - **To escape from the Duke and Max Holf.**
56. Where did Sapt and Rassendyll hide to see the two men?
- **They hid among the tall, dark trees of the forest of Zenda. They stopped at a fork in the road.**
57. Where were the two roads going in the forest?
- **One road went deep into the forest; the other went outside the forest towards the castle.**
58. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll wait in the forest for the two men?
- **To know who the men were and where they were going.**
59. What made them see the road clearly at night? - **The moon was full.**
60. How did Sapt know that they were two men on their horses? Who were they? - **Sapt put his ear to the ground. He could hear the footsteps of two men on their horses. They were the Duke and Max Holf**
61. Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road?
- **The Duke and Max Holf. They followed the road to the left. That was to the castle.**
62. Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go? - **Rassendyll and Sapt took the road to the hunting lodge.**
63. Which way did Max Holf think they should go? Why?
- **He thought they should go to the castle where they could learn the truth.**
64. Why did Sapt still hold up his gun and was pointing it at the Duke? - **He would have loved to shoot the Duke dead, but he realised it would not have helped the King at this moment.**
65. How long did Sapt and Rassendyll wait before getting out of the trees? - **Ten minutes.**
66. What news \ message did the Duke get before setting off to the castle?
- **He had news that all is well.**
67. What did the message the Duke had got mean? - **It meant that the king was taken to the castle.**
68. Could Sapt understand the message? - **No, he couldn't. He was puzzled.**
69. When did Sapt and Rassendyll understand the message?
- **When they reached the hunting lodge and found Josef killed and the king was kidnapped.**
70. What were the first signs that there was something wrong when they arrived at the lodge?
1- **The lodge was dark and quiet and no one came out to meet them.**
2- **Sapt found some handkerchiefs, which he used to tie up the old woman, on the ground.**
3- **The front door to the lodge was not locked. The door to the cellar was open**
71. What did Sapt realise when he found the Handkerchiefs?
- **He realized that there was something wrong with the king.**
72. Why was Sapt very worried when they found neither Josef nor the king?

- **Because he loved the King and would have hated anything bad to have happened to him.**

73. Where did Rassendyll find Josef? What was wrong with him?

- **He found Josef locked inside a room in the cellar. He was killed.**

74. What did Sapt think they have to do to save the king? - **They had to get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau. Michael would have to be caught before the King was killed.**

75. Who did Sapt doubt have told the Duke about the king? - **Johann's mother.**

76. What would have happened if Sapt, Rassendyll and Fritz hadn't left the hunting lodge?

- **They would have been killed.**

77. What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do when they didn't find the king in the hunting lodge?

- **He wanted him to be the King again.**

78. Did Michael realise that Rassendyll was not the real King? How do you know?

- **Yes, because he got news that the king was imprisoned in the castle of Zenda.**

Quotations

1) "Why have we changed our route?"

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.**

b) Which route did they change to?

- **The route through the poor areas of the town.**

c) Why do you think was the route changed?

- **Perhaps Strakencz wanted to test the king's courage.**

2) "It's better this way,"

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **Marshal Strakencz to Rassendyll.**

b) Which way would they go?

- **The route through the poor areas of the town.**

c) Was this route really better Why / Why not? - **No, because poor people didn't like the king.**

3) "Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you."

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.**

b) Why did Mr Rassendyll insist on walking through the poor area himself?

- **Because he wanted the poor people to see that their King trusted them. He wanted to act like a king.**

4) "You can wait here until I have continued through the old part alone,"

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.**

b) Why was it dangerous for Mr Rassendyll to go into the old part alone?

- **Because people there were loyal to Duke Michael.**

5) "I want the people who live here to see that their king trusts them,"

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.**

b) What did the word "here" refer to?

- **To the old part of the town.**

6) "I'm surprised that he's on his own, but he's taller than I thought."

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **One of the poor people of the old part to the others.**

b) Who did he speak about?

- **About Rassendyll (the pretend king).**

7) "His skin's very white,"

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **One the poor people to the others**

b) Who did he speak about?

- **About Rassendyll (the pretend king).**

8) "Congratulations."

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **Duke Michael to Rassendyll (the pretend king).**

b) On what occasion was it said?

- **On the occasion of the coronation.**

9) "When's the wedding?"

a) Who said that? To whom?

- **One of the people to the pretend king (Rassendyll).**

b) Whose wedding did the speaker ask about ?

- **The king and Princess Flavia.**

10) "Do you know, Rudolf, you look different today?"

a) Who said that?

- **Princess Flavia to Rudolf Rassendyll .**

b) How was he different?

- **He looked tired, serious and thinner.**

c) Why was he different?

- **Because he was not the real king.**

11) "You look tired and serious, and think you're thinner. You have changed."

a) Who said that ? To whom?

- **Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.**

b) Where was it said? When?

- In the coach when they were on a tour around the city after the coronation.

12) "I think I want to change now that I'm a king."

- a) Who said that ? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Princess Flavia.**
- b) How did he change? - **He looked tired, serious and he was thinner.**
- c) Why do you think he changed? - **Because he was not the real king.**

13) "Perhaps you already have. I heard that you rode through the old town alone."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.**
- b) How did the addressee justify that? - **He wanted to change because he became the king.**

14) "The people there must have appreciated what you did."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.**
- b) Which people did the speaker mean? - **The poor people.**
- c) What did the speaker do? - **He rode through the old part of the city alone.**

15) "I hope I'll make a good king."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Princess Flavia.**
- b) What had the speaker already done to be a good king?
- **He rode through the old part of the city alone.**

16) "That was a day to remember! I think I'd like to be king for a day."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
- b) Why was the speaker so excited? - **Because their plan succeeded.**

17) "Duke Michael wouldn't like it if you became too popular with his people."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
- b) What did the underlined word refer to? - **The poor people of the old part.**
- c) Why were they The Duke's people? - **Because they supported Michael not the king.**

18) "Only if you stay alive as long as that. Michael had news from Zenda"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
- b) When did he say that? - **When Rassendyll said he would be king until that night.**

19) "Who can I get a permit from?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**
- b) Why did the speaker need a permit? - **To leave the city to save the real king.**

20) "I can pretend to be the king but that doesn't mean I can write like him too!"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**
- b) When did Rassendyll say that? - **When Sapt asked him to copy the king's signature.**

21) "Oh, it's not hard to copy,"

- a) Who said that ? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll**
- b) Why did Sapt copy the king's signature on the form? - **To get a permit to pass the city gates.**
- c) What did that tell us about Sapt? - **Sapt was interested even in small details. He was clever.**

22) "Now, remember our plan. I'll go with you."

- a) Who said that ? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
- b) What was that plan? - **To return to the hunting lodge and bring back the real king.**
Rassendyll will return to England as quickly as possible.

23) "You will tell everyone that the king has gone to bed and that he isn't to be woken by anybody till nine o'clock tomorrow morning,"

- a) Who said that ? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz.**
- b) When did this conversation take place? - **At the end of the coronation day.**

24) "You mustn't let him in, even if your life depends on it."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz**
- b) Who did (him) refer to? - **Duke Michael.**
- c) Why mustn't he let the Duke in? - **To save their plan from being discovered**

25) "I don't need to be told that,"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz said that proudly to colonel Sapt.**
- b) What didn't he need to be told? - **Not to let anyone enter the king's room.**

26) "Here, put on this big coat and hat. Now, are you ready to go?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll**

- b) Why did the addressee put on those clothes? - ***In order to be well hidden from people.***
- 27) "You may need it to get through the city gates. They will be closed at this time"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) What did the word (it) refer to - ***The gun.***
- 28) "In the old king's time, I knew all about the secret passage,"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) Where was this passage? - ***In the king's palace.***
- 29) "My father is not here. I'm afraid. He's gone to see the king."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***The guard's daughter to Rassendyll and Sapt.***
- b) Why did the addressees need her father? - ***To open the city gate from them.***
- 30) "Your father should have stayed here."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to the guard's daughter.***
- b) Was Sapt really angry as the guard wasn't at the gate? - ***No, he was happy and relieved.***
- 31) But he told me not to open the gate for anyone,"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***The guard's daughter to Rassendyll and Sapt.***
- b) Who told the speaker not to open the gate for anyone? - ***Her father.***
- 32) "Then you must give me the key to open it,"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to the guard's daughter.***
- b) Which key did the speaker want? - ***The key of the city gate.***
- 33) "Here's a form from the king himself. You can show it to your father."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to the guard's daughter.***
- b) What was the form? - ***It was the permit which Sapt signed to pass the gate.***
- 34) "Now we must move quickly."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) Why did they need to move quickly?
- ***To reach the hunting lodge and take the king to the palace before morning.***
- 35) "What do you think the Duke knows about our plan?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
- b) Which plan did the speaker mean? - ***Rassendyll replacing the king in the coronation.***
- 36) "Listen. I can hear something."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) What did Sapt hear? - ***He heard two men on two horses coming behind them.***
- 37) "We are lucky that the wind's blowing towards us so we can hear them."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) What luck was in the wind's blowing towards them?
- ***They could hear the two horses which were about two kilometres behind.***
- 38) "I think there're two horses. They are about two kilometres behind."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) Who was riding the horses? - ***The Duke and Max Holf (Johan's brother).***
- c) How could the speaker know that they were two horses? - ***He put his ear on the ground.***
- 39) "To the right's our road, to the left's the castle. Now get off your horse."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) Where to did their road lead them? - ***To the hunting lodge.***
- 40) "Get off? But they will catch us!"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt***
- 41) "Do you want to see who they are?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
- b) Who did they see after that? - ***Duke Michael and Max Holf.***
- 42) "Yes, and where they are going,"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) Who were they talking about? - ***Duke Michael and Max Holf.***
- c) Where were "they" going? - ***To the castle of Zenda.***
- 43) "Here they come! Look, it's the Duke."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
b) Who was with the duke? - *Max Holf.*
- 44) "Which way?"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Duke Michael to Max Holf.*
b) Which way did they take? - *The way to the castle where they could learn the truth.*
- 45) "I think we should go to the castle where we can learn the truth."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Max Holf to Duke Michael.*
b) Which truth did they want to know? - *The truth about what had happened to the real king.*
- 46) "Why not the hunting lodges?"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Duke Michael to Max Holf.*
b) Why not the hunting lodge?
- *If all was well, why would they go there? And if all wasn't well, he feared there would be a trap.*
- 47) "If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear it will be a trap."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Max Holf to Duke Michael*
b) What do you deduce from their fear of a trap? - *Michael wasn't sure that all was well.*
- 48) "To Zenda, then."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Duke Michael to Max Holf.*
b) Why didn't they go to the hunting lodge? - *Because they feared there had been a trap.*
- 49) "So, he's had news that all's well"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
b) When did he say that? - *After Duke Michael and Max Holf had gone away.*
- 50) "I wish I knew. It's a real puzzle."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
b) What did the speaker wish he had known?
- *He wished he knew what the Duke had meant by "All is well"*
- 51) "What did "All's well" mean? Was all well with the king?"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to himself.*
b) What did "All's well" mean? - It meant that the Duke's plan to kidnap the king was successful.
c) Was all well with the king? - No, he was kidnapped and imprisoned in the castle of Zenda.
- 52) "Look there! That's what I used to tie up the old woman."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
b) What did they look at? - *To the torn and dirty handkerchiefs.*
c) Who was the old woman? - *Johan's mother.*
- 53) "So they found the old woman,"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt.*
b) Who did "they" refer to? - *To Michael's men.*
c) Who was the old woman? - *She was Johann's mother.*
- 54) "I realized that when I saw the handkerchiefs."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
b) What did he realise? - *He realised that Michael's men had reached the place.*
- 55) "Where are Josef and the king?"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt.*
b) Where were Josef and the king then?
- *The king was kidnapped and imprisoned in the castle of Zenda. Josef was killed in the hunting lodge.*
- 56) "It's not good news. I'm afraid he's dead,"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt*
b) Who is dead? - *Josef who was killed by Michael's guards.*
- 57) "No, the body's Josef. The king isn't there."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt.*
b) Where was the king then? - *The king was kidnapped and imprisoned in the castle of Zenda.*
- 58) "So they have got the king."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
b) Who have got the king? - *Michael's men.*

- 59) "That's why they said that all's well. But when did they find out?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt.*
 b) Who did "they " refer to? - *Michael and his men.*
- 60) "Michael must have known all day,"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 b) What did Michael knew? - *He knew that Rassendyll wasn't the real king.*
- 61) "What did he think when he met me then? He knew I wasn't the real king."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Colonel Sapt.*
 b) How did the Duke feel during the coronation? - *He was angry and worried.*
- 62) "It doesn't matter what he thought then. What matters is what he thinks now."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
 b) Who was the speaker talking about? - *Duke Michael.*
- 63) "We must get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau. Michael will have to be caught before the king is killed"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Colonel Sapt.*
 b) Why must they get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau?
 - *Because Michael would have to be caught before the king was killed.*
- 64) "Wait .We need to think. It must have been the old woman who told them"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 b) Who did the old woman tell what had happened? - *Michael's men*
 b) Who was the woman? - *She was Johann's mother.*
- 65) If we hadn't escaped to Strelsau, we would have been killed."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
 b) Who would have killed them? - *Michael's men*
- 66) "Let's think about how we could worry him a bit more."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
 b) Who did they want to worry? - *Michael.*
- 67) "We'll get back to Strelsau. The king will be back in the capital again tomorrow."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 b) What did the speaker mean? - *He meant that Rassendyll would continue to play the king.*
- 68) "How is it possible if we don't know where he is?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt*
 b) Who was the speaker talking about? - *The real king.*
- 69) "We'll continue with the game we started. You have done a good job until now,"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 b) What was the game? - *Rassendyll pretended to be the king of Ruritania*
- 70) Do you mean you want me to be the king again?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Colonel Sapt.*
 b) Why was the speaker made the king at first? - *To replace the real king in the coronation.*
 c) Why was the speaker made the king again? - *Because the real king was kidnapped..*

Mistake Correction

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- All the people smile and cheer the King.
- 2- Colonel Sapt understands the message before he reached the hunting lodge.
- 3- Duke Michael thought that Rassendyll was really the King.
- 4- Fritz stopped and hid to see who is coming.
- 5- Fritz thinks it is a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people.
- 6- It is Marshal Strakencz's idea for the King to ride through the old part of town alone.
- 7- Josef is freed by Duke Michael's men.
- 8- Marshal Strakencz knows that Rassendyll is not the real King and is angry.
- 9- Michael can't have known all day that Rassendyll was not the real king.
- 10- Rassendyll and Princess Flavia rod a cr round the city,
- 11- Rassendyll decides to really act like a soldier

- 12- Rassendyll found Josef injured in side the lodge.
- 13- Rassendyll found the body of the Marshal in the hunting lodge
- 14- Rassendyll rode in a coach with Antoinet Du Muban.
- 15- Rassendyll rode through the poor part of town with close guards
- 16- Rose says that Rudolf looks different but she thinks he is the real King.
- 17- Rudolf Elephberg was crowned King.
- 18- Sapt and Rassendyll are planning to set a trap at the hunting lodge.
- 19- Sapt and Rassendyll go out of the palace through the front door.
- 20- Sapt and Rassendyll heard horses coming in front of them.
- 21- Sapt and Rassendyll hid in the cave to see who was coming behind them.
- 22- Sapt had an idea where they kept the king.
- 23- Sapt tells Fritz that he may let Michael into the King's bedroom.
- 24- Sapt wanted Rassendyll to visit Ruritania immediately.
- 25- Sapt wanted to stop the game he started.
- 26- Sapt wants to worry Duke Michael some more.
- 27- The duke got a message that every thing went wrong.
- 28- The Duke took the road to hunting lodge
- 29- The Duke went to the hunting lodge alone.
- 30- They found Josef and Johann's mother killed in the cellar.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer these questions.

1. What kind of people lives in the old part of the city? What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?
- The people in the old part are poor and many of them are loyal to Duke Michael. Rassendyll tells the soldiers to ride ahead and behind him, not next to him, so that he can show the people that he trusts them.
2. Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
- He knows that the people in the old town support the Duke and he is afraid that Rassendyll will be hurt or attacked there.
3. Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees "the King" (Rassendyll)?
- He thought that the King was still in Zenda (because he had poisoned him), so he is surprised to see the King here at the coronation.
4. Does Michael realise that this is not the real King? How do you know?
- Yes, Michael knows Rassendyll is not the real King. First, Michael knows (or thinks) that the King is poisoned and still in Zenda. And the words in the story tell us: "No one else ... seemed to realise that I was not the real King." This means Michael realised it but no other person.
5. Does the Princess know that this is not the real King? What does she say about him?
- She thinks this is the real King, but she says that he has changed. He is more tired and serious, and also thinner.
6. Why do Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?
- Michael controls the city and he has had news from Zenda, so he won't want people to leave the city.
7. How do they get a permit from the King? **- Sapt can write like the King and he signs the paper.**
8. What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?
- He stays and guards the bedroom. He must not let anyone inside the room.
9. How do Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace? Why do they go this way?
- They go through a secret passage in the wall and out of a secret back door. They do this because they don't want anyone to see them and they want people to think that the King is in his bedroom.
10. Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road? Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go?
- Duke Michael and his servant Max Holt are riding to Zenda. They decide to go to the castle. Sapt and Rassendyll go to the hunting lodge.
11. What do you think the message "all is well" means?
- Answers may vary. It probably means that the King is captured, as that is what the Duke was planning, but there may be other details that are also "well".
12. What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?

- Johann's mother and the King are gone. Josef is killed.

13. What does Sapt want Rassendyll to do? **- He wants him to continue to pretend to be the King.**

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. It is Marshal Strakencz's idea for the King to ride through the old part of town alone. (F)

- The Marshal wants the King to ride through the old part, but not alone. (He hesitates to obey the order to make his men go ahead.)

2. Rassendyll decides to really act like a king. (T)

3. All the people smile and cheer the King. (F)

- Some are quiet and look at "the King" angrily.

4. The Princess says that Rudolf looks different but she thinks he is the real King. (T)

5. Fritz thinks it is a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people. (F)

- He thinks Michael won't like it.

6. Sapt tells Fritz that he may let Michael into the King's bedroom. (F)

- He must keep Michael out, even if he has to be killed doing it. (Even if his life depends on it)

7. Sapt and Rassendyll go out of the palace through a secret door. (T)

8. Sapt and Rassendyll are planning to set a trap at the hunting lodge. (F)

- They're planning to just take the King.

9. They find Josef and Johann's mother killed in the cellar. (F)

- They find Josef killed, but Johann's mother has escaped.

10. Sapt wants Rassendyll to leave Ruritania immediately. (F)

- He wants him to continue to pretend to be the King.

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone. "

1. Who says this to whom? **- Rassendyll says this to Marshal Strakencz.**

2. Where are they and when is this? **- They were in the streets of strelsau when Marshal Strakencz wanted Rassendyll(the king) to go through the old part of the city.**

3. Why does the speaker say this? -

- He wants to act as a king. He wants the people to know that he trusts them.

"You mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride alone through the old town. Duke Michael won't like it if you become too popular with his people, you know."

1. Who says this to whom? **- Fritz says this to Rassendyll.**

2. Where and when is this said?

- They are in the King's bedroom after the coronation.

3. Why did the person ride alone through the old town and why won't Duke Michael like it if the person becomes too popular?

- Rassendyll wanted to act like a real king and show that he wasn't afraid of the people/show that he trusted the people. Duke Michael won't like it because if he tries to become King, the people will probably support him. But if the King/Rassendyll becomes popular, it will be harder for Michael to get the support of the people.

"If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there 'll be a trap."

1. Who says this to whom- **Max Holt says this to Duke Michael.**

2. Where are they? **- They are on the road between Strelsau and Zenda./On the way to Zenda.**

3. What is "there"? What do you think he means by "all's well"?

- "There" means the hunting lodge. "All's well" probably means that the Duke's plan has gone ahead and that the King is kidnapped. (Student's ideas may vary.)

"We'll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"

1. Who says this to whom? **- Sapt says this to Rassendyll.**

2. Where are they and what has happened? **- They are in the hunting lodge near Zenda. They have found Josef dead and the King is gone.**

3. How will the King be back in the capital tomorrow?

- Rassendyll will continue to pretend to be the King. / Sapt wants Rassendyll to continue to pretend to be the King.

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

- 1- How did Sapt feel while Rassendyll was walking through the street in the poor area?
- 2- How did the king look different according to Princess Flavia?
- 3- How did the king surprise Princess Flavia on the day of coronation?
- 4- How did they lose time on their way to the hunting lodge?
- 5- How do Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace? Why do they go this way?
- 6- How do they get a permit from the King?
- 7- How would Fritz stop other people from disturbing the king?
- 8- Mr Rassendyll was brave. Give examples
- 9- Only if you stay alive as long as that," why was Sapt optimistic?
- 10- Rassendyll loved the role of the king. Explain.
- 11- Rassendyll was just starting to ride through the city. Who did he see that might recognise him?
- 12- Show that Duke Michael wasn't happy about the coronation
- 13- What did Mr Rassendyll expect Antoinette de Mauban to do on seeing him?
- 14- What did Mr Rassendyll hope?
- 15- What did Mr Rassendyll remember about the coronation?
- 16- What do kings and their people usually do before and after a coronation? Do you think any of these will be especially dangerous for Rassendyll?
- 17- What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?
- 18- What do you think the message "all is well" means?
- 19- What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?
- 20- What does Sapt want Rassendyll to do?
- 21- What kind of people lives in the old part of the city?
- 22- What order did Sapt give to Rassendyll twice?
- 23- What orders did Mr Rassendyll give to the Marshal? What order did Mr Rassendyll give to the Marshal twice?
- 24- What showed that the people in the poor area liked the Duke more than the king?
- 25- What showed the Rassendyll loved Princess Flavia.
- 26- What was the king's walk's effect on People in the poor area?
- 27- When did he remember the real king?
- 28- Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road? Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go?
- 29- Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban at the coronation?
- 30- What was the town like that day?
- 31- What did Sapt wish to do at the forest? What stopped him from doing so?
- 32- What did Sapt think they have to do when the king was kidnapped?
- 33- What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?
- 34- Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
- 35- Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees "the King" (Rassendyll)?
- 36- Does Michael realise that this is not the real King? How do you know?
- 37- Does the Princess know that this is not the real King? What does she say about him?
- 38- Why do Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?
- 39- People in the poor area behaved in different ways when the king was in their area. Explain.

Quotations

1- "Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone."

a- Who says this to whom?

b- Where are they and when is this?

c- Why does the speaker say this?

2- You mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride alone through the old town. Duke Michael won't like it if you become too popular with his people, you know. "

a- Who says this to whom?

b- Where and when is this said?

c- Why did the person ride alone through the old town and why won't Duke Michael like it if the person becomes too popular?

3- "If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there 'll be a trap. "

a- Who says this to whom?

b- Where are they?

c- What is "there"? What do you think he means by "all's well"?

4- "We'll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"

a- Who says this to whom?

b- Where are they and what has happened?

c- How will the King be back in the capital tomorrow?

5-Why have we changed our route?".

a- Who said this to whom was it said? Where were they?

b- What was the answer to that question?

c- Was the speaker satisfied with that answer? Why?

6-Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me,". "I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone.

a- Who said this? To whom was it said?

b- What did the speaker want to prove?

c- Was it a good decision to go without guards in this area? why

7-I want the people who live here to see that their King trusts them."

a- Who said this to whom? What does " here" refer to?

b-Which people lived there?

C-Do you think the real king would do the same? Give a reason

d- Why was it dangerous for the king to walk in this area?

8-Listen,". "I can hear something.""We're lucky that the wind's blowing towards us so we can hear them.

a-Who said these words to whom? Where were they at that time?

b- What thing did they hear? Who was coming towards them? c- Where were all going? Why?

9-We'll go back to Strelsau,"""The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!

a-What does the pronoun " we" refer to?

b- Which king would be back in the capital?

c- What happened to he real king? How did the listener feel on hearing this?

10-How is that possible if we don't know where he is?"

a- Who said this to whom? Where were they?

b-What does "he" refer to? Who were they talking about?

c- Why didn't they know where he was? What happened to him?

11-It's not good news. I'm afraid he's dead,"

a- Who said this? To whom? Where was it said?

b- Who was he talking about?

c- How did he die? Who did that?

12-So, they've got the King!"

a- Who said this? To whom was it said? Where was it said?

b- Who does " they" refer to?

c- Why did they kidnap the king? Where was he locked?

d- Where did they leave thing? Why did they leave him there?

13-Look, it's the Duke"

a-Who said these words? To whom? Where were they?

b- Where did they see the Duke? Who was the Duke?

c- Did the Duke see them? Why?

d- Where did the Duke go next? Why?

14-"Get off your horse!"

a-who said this? To whom?

b- Why did they get off their horses?

c- What did they see when they got off their horses?

15- Here, put on this big coat and hat," "Now, are you ready to go?

a-who said this to whom?

b- Why did he ask him to wear the coat and the hat? What was their plan?

c- Where they going? Which way did the follow to avoid people?

16-Now, remember our plan. I'll go with you, Rassendyl

a- Who said this? To whom? Where were they at the moment?

b-What was their plan they were talking about?

c- What was the role of the addressed person? Was it a successful plan?

17-That was a day to remember!"

a-Who said these words? To whom?

b- which day was the speaker talking about?

c- Why did he think they should remember that day?

d- What did the speaker wish to be for one day?

18-Do you know, Rudolf, you look different today? You look more tired and serious, and I think you're thinner can't believe that you really have changed today."

a-who said these words to whom? When was it said?

b- Did she realise he wasn't the real king?

c- How did Rassendyl justify this change?

d- What did Rassendyll do and impressed the speaker?

19-My father's not here, I'm afraid. He's gone to see the King,"

a- Who said this? To whom? b- What did the father tell him\ her before going?

c- When did she allow the speaker to pass?

20- Do you want to see who they are?"

a- Who said this? To whom was it said? b- Who did he see? Where were they going?

c- What did they say and he couldn't understand at first?

21-Michael must've known all day,"

a- who said this? To whom?

b- What did Michael know all day?

c- How did he know that? What showed that he knew everything?

22-We'll go back to Stelsau and continue with the game we started. You've done a good job until now, so why not continue?"

a- Who said this? To whom was it said? b- At what point did he take this decision?

c- What game was the speaker talking about? Was the listener happy or sad about that decision?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1- According to Colonel Sapt, it was a bad idea for the King (Rudolf Rassendyll) to eat alone in the old town.

2- After the coronation, the king (Rudolf Rassendyll) stood in the palace for an hour killing many ambassadors and important people who came to see him.

3- After the coronation, the King (Rudolf Rassendyll) went in a coach around the streets with Lord Burlesdon.

4- All the people in the old town smiled and cheered the King.

5- As soon as all the poor people were out of sight, Rudolf Rassendyll rode alone through the streets of the old town.

6- At the fork in the road, Duke Michael and Max Holf decided to go to the right to reach the hunting lodge.

7- Colonel Sapt and Rudolf Rassendyll hid in the forest of Zenda where they could see Josef and Johann going to the castle.

8- Colonel Sapt believed that all his people should like him, not just a few.

9- Colonel Sapt found 5 or 6 torn and dirty handkerchiefs on the ground which he used to tie up the dog.

10- Colonel Sapt held up his gun and wanted to shoot Rudolf Rassendyll who was on his way to the castle of Zenda.

11- Colonel Sapt put his ear to the ground because he was too tired.

12- Colonel Sapt was relieved that Rudolf Rassendyll was still dead after riding alone through the poor area of the city.

13- Duke Michael knew that Rudolf Rassendyll wasn't the real King and he was very happy.

14- Duke Michael's men killed the King and took him to the castle.

15- Flavia was asked to guard the King's bedroom and stop anyone trying to get in.

16- Fritz thought it was a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people who supported the Duke.

17- In the old town, the streets were lined with nobody.

18- In the poor area of the city, Duke Michael noticed that some people were happy but others looked angrily at him.

19- It seemed that changing the route of the royal procession into the old town was the Marshal's plan to arrest Duke Michael.

20- It seemed that Flavia was kidnapped from the cellar by the Duke's men.

21- It was Marshal Strakencz's idea for the King to go through the old part of the town alone.

22- Lord Burlesdon, from England, couldn't recognize Rudolf Rassendyll because his eyes were so poor.

23- Marshal Strakencz gave orders to his men to change their route into the modern part of the town.

24- Max Holf was found dead in the hunting lodge.

25- People who lived in the poor area of Strelsau were loyal to Rudolf Rassendyll.

26- Princess Flavia believed that Rudolf Rassendyll wasn't the real King.

27- Rudolf Rassendyll and Max Holf were going to the castle of Zenda.

28- Rudolf Rassendyll believed that if he was to be a King, he must act like a painter.

29- Rudolf Rassendyll could have killed Duke Michael with his gun, but he realized that wouldn't have helped the King at that moment.

40- Rudolf Rassendyll expected Antoinette de Mauban to tell everyone that she was going to marry him.

30- Rudolf Rassendyll managed to escape from the outside of the palace safely despite the poor people's anger.

Chapter 4

accent	لهجة	evil	شرير - شر	paintings	رسومات
accuse of	يتهم بـ	feelings	مشاعر	poisonous	سام
admit	يقر بـ	fighter	محارب	pretending	متظاهرا
bad character	شخصية سيئة	finger	إصبع	prisoner	سجين
bandage	ضمادة	foreigner	اجتبي	protest	يحتج على
bite	يعض	furniture	أثاث	seconds	ثواني
bow	ينحني	gap	ثغرة - فجوة	secrets	أسرار
brave	شجاع	guests	ضيوف	serious	خطير
breathless	مقطوع النفس	guilt	معصية - إثم	spade	جاروف
distant	بعيد	hide	يخفي	special	خاص
documents	مستندات	honest	أمين	splendid	رائع
doubts	شكوك	madder	أكثر جنونا	stalemate	مأزق - ورطة
duties	واجبات	mistake	غلطة - خطأ	surely	بالتأكيد
enormous	ضخم	moonlight	ضوء القمر	terrible pain	الم فظيع

Questions & Answers

- What did Colonel Sapt suggest when they found that the king wasn't there?
- **Sapt suggested that Rassendyll return to the capital and continue pretending to be the King.**
- Why was Rassendyll really against the suggestion of returning to the capital?
- **Because the plan was too dangerous. It sounded mad.**
- From Sapt's point of view, how could Rassendyll save the king? Why? - **He should go back and pretend to be the king. They couldn't kill the real king as long as Rassendyll impersonated the king.**
- Why was Rassendyll opposing the suggestion of pretending to be the king again?
- **Because the Duke and all his men knew where the real King was.**
- How did Sapt make Rassendyll overcome his doubts about pretending to be the king?
- **Sapt told Rassendyll it was a risk but they had to have a king in Strelsau or the city would belong to Michael within 24 hours.**
- Why did Sapt think the Duke and his men couldn't reveal Rassendyll's secret?
- **They had evidence against them. They were guilty of kidnapping the king and killing his servant, Josef.**
- What couldn't the Duke and his men declare?
- **They couldn't declare that Rassendyll wasn't the real king or who Rassendyll really was.**
- Why did Rassendyll still have doubts about his success of continuing pretending to be the king?
- **He thought that surely someone in Strelsau would realise he was not the real King. Princess Flavia said that the king was different.**
- Why was Rassendyll sure that Princess Flavai would realise his identity?
- **She noticed that there was a change in the King's behaviour, character.**
- Why did Sapt insist that Rassendyll had to continue pretending to be the king?
- **They had to have a King in Strelsau, or the city would belong to Michael within twenty-four hours. Rassendyll had to do it for Ruritania.**
- What would happen if the king was dead? - **Rassendyll would remain the king.**
- On what condition would Rassendyll remain the king?
- **If the real King was dead, Rassendyll would stay King.**
- Why was Sapt sure that the Duke and his men wouldn't hurt the real king?
- **Because they knew that Rassendyll would stay King if they killed the real king.**
- What was Rassendyll's opinion about Sapt's plan of continuing to be the king?
- **It was madder than the first plan, which had been a success, but Rassendyll saw that it could work.**
- Why was it necessary to go back to Strelsau and leave the Hunting lodge?
- **Because they would be caught if they stayed there.**
- Who did they see coming to the hunting lodge at night? Why did they come? - **Michael's men: four were on horses; another four or five were walking. They came to bury Josef's body.**
- Why did Michael's men have spades? - **To bury Josef's body.**

18. What did it mean that they were going to "hide their evil work"?
- ***They would bury Josef whom they killed while kidnapping the real king.***
19. How did Rassendyll and Sapt try to avenge Josef's death?
- ***Rassendyll and Sapt attacked the men, killed two of them, and injured others.***
20. What did Rassendyll and Sapt have over the Duke's men? - ***They had the advantage of surprise.***
21. At what point did Rassendyll have the sense of revenge?
- ***When he saw the Duke's men coming to bury Josef, he decided to attack and kill some of those evil men.***
22. What plan did Sapt and Rassendyll make to attack the Duke's men at the hunting lodge?
- ***They went out of a back door and climbed onto their horses with their swords ready. When they heard Michael's men arrive at the front door, they drove their horses fast attacking them.***
23. How did the Duke's men feel on seeing Rassendyll and Sapt at the hunting lodge?
- ***They were shocked to see them because they weren't prepared.***
24. How was Rassendyll about to be trapped? How did he get out?
- ***There were people all around him. He saw a gap between the men and saw his chance to escape. He turned his horse and quickly rode through the gap towards the forest.***
25. How did Rassendyll have his finger injured? - ***One of Michael's men shot him.***
26. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll stop on their way back the Strelsau?
- ***They stopped so that Sapt could put a bandage on Rassendyll's finger, which hurt badly.***
27. When did they arrive at a farm? - ***Just as the sun was rising on a cold, clear day.***
28. On the farm, Rassendyll covered his face. Why did he do so?
- ***So that no one would recognize him.***
29. Why couldn't Sapt and Rassendyll wait any longer on the farm?
- ***Because they had to be at Strelsau before nine o'clock before any one notice the King's absence.***
30. Why were the streets of the Strelsau quiet when Rassendyll and Sapt got back?
- ***As most of the people were resting after the celebrations.***
31. "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?" Why does Sapt say so? - ***He was trying to justify the king's return back to the palace at such a strange time.***
32. How did Sapt explain Rassendyll's getting hurt?
- ***He explained that He caught his finger in a door.***
33. Which way did they follow to enter the palace again? - ***They went in through the secret passage.***
34. What did Sapt ask his servant Freyler not to do?
- ***He asked him not to say anything about the king's finger injury.***
35. What lesson did Rassendyll learn from Colonel Sapt?
- ***Sometimes it's best not to trust even the best of men.***
36. How did Fritz behave when Rassendyll came back to the palace?
- ***He jumped up and bowed in front of Rassendyll thinking that he was the real king.***
37. Who visited Rassendyll on the morning of the coronation day? What for? - ***He was visited by a servant of Princess Flavia, who had sent him to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.***
38. Why was Fritz looking serious after Rassendyll had come back?
- ***He was worried that the real king had died.***
39. How did Rassendyll comfort Fritz about the king's safety?
- ***He told Fritz that the king was still alive but Duke Michael was holding him prisoner.***
40. How did Sapt prepare Rassendyll to continue playing the role of the king?
- ***He told Rassendyll for three hours all about the King's duties.***
41. What did Rassendyll think of the king's duties?
- ***It seemed that a king's life is quite hard but a pretend king's life was even harder.***
42. Sapt was always next to Rassendyll while doing his duties. Explain why.
- ***Sapt stayed with Rassendyll to tell him what he ought to do and what he ought not to do, and what he should say to the many important people he had to meet during the day.***
43. How did Sapt relieve Rassendyll when he couldn't answer the French Ambassador's question?
- ***Sapt told Rassendyll not to worry, as the real King wouldn't have been able to answer either.***
44. How did Rassendyll's injured finger affect his work as a king?
- ***He could not write because of his finger, so many important documents were not completed.***
45. Why does Rassendyll use a new servant? Who is the servant replacing?

So that he didn't realise that he was not the king. The servant was replacing Josef.

46. What made Rassendyll want to take rest after returning to the palace?

- Because he was very tired and he was not used to such hard work.

47. Why was Sapt sure that the duke wouldn't kill the king? Why couldn't Michael accuse Rassendyll of anything? *- If he kills the King, he knows that Rassendyll would stay King instead. And he couldn't accuse Rassendyll of anything because people would know that he had kidnapped the King.*

48. What did Fritz mean by "it's a stalemate"? *- He meant that neither Michael and his men nor Sapt and Rassendyll would do any thing but wait. Michael could neither kill the king nor accuse Rassendyll of any thing. Sapt, Fritz, and Rassendyll couldn't attack Michael to rescue the king.*

49. Who were the six men?

- They were six special soldiers who Michael kept in his house at all times. They were completely loyal to him. Three were from Ruritania, one was Belgian, one was French, and one was from England.

50. How many of the six men were in Strelsau? Where were the rest of them?

- Three of them were in Strelsau with the Duke. The others were guarding the kidnapped King.

51. What did Sapt conclude when he knew that half of the six men were in Strelsau? Why?

- The other half were guarding the King that means the King must be alive.

52. How did Rassendyll decide to act like a real king?

- By keeping some secrets even from the people he could trust most.

53. What did Rassendyll keep secret from Sapt and Fritz?

- His plan to make himself as popular as he could.

54. What was Rassendyll's plan to be popular? Why did he do so?

- Rassendyll would mix with poor people. Poor people would see him more often and he would say nothing bad about Michael. In this way, he could hope to stop the poorer people of Strelsau from thinking badly of him. Then, if there were a fight, perhaps people would not want to follow Michael

55. What did Rassendyll hope there wouldn't be?

- He hoped there would not be a fight between him and the Duke.

56. What good thing would come from his plan?

- Michael would not grow stronger when the game ended.

57. How did Rassendyll make himself popular?

He rode his horse through the park with Fritz and waved to everyone who bowed to him. He wanted to be seen most in the old town, where most of the poor people lived.

58. How did Rassendyll try to impress people on his way to Princess Flavia's palace?

- While riding through some of the narrowest and oldest town streets, Rassendyll stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin. This attracted a lot of interest, and soon hundreds of people were following him on his way to the home of Princess Flavia.

59. Why did Rassendyll think it was a good idea to visit Flavia?

- Because the Princess was very popular and the people seemed very pleased that he had gone to see her. If Rassendyll had the support of the Princess, this could only help him against Michael.

60. Why did Rassendyll have to be very careful while talking with the Princess?

- Because he needed the Princess to trust him. He did not want to say too much to her, or she would realise he was not the real King.

61. Although Rassendyll wanted to show the Princess that he trusted her, she must not tell him what she could say. Why? How did Rassendyll explain this? *- Because he was not the real king.*

62. Why did Rassendyll want Michael to be near him?

- Because he wanted to keep an eye on him.

63. How did Flavia feel on hearing that the king wanted Michael to be near him? Why?

- She looked at Rassendyll strangely. This was not the way the king thought.

64. Who else came to visit Princess Flavia? How did Rassendyll feel when he heard the news?

- It was Duke Michael. Rassendyll was surprised by this news and did not know what to say.

65. What news did Rassendyll hear and saddened him? *- Michael had come to meet him.*

66. What mistake did Rassendyll make while visiting Princess Flavia? *- When the Duke came to visit Princess Flavia, Rassendyll kept him waiting for long without giving him permission to enter.*

67. What mustn't the Duke do when the king was at the palace of Flavia?

- He mustn't enter until the king gave him permission.

68. What did Rassnedyl wish Fritz had told him about? - ***He wished that Fritz had told him that the king had to give others permission before they enter a place he was at.***
69. How did Rassendyll justify his mistake of keeping the Duke waiting for long?
- ***He said he had forgotten.***
70. How did Rassendyll cover the mistake he made about keeping the Duke waiting for long?
- ***Rassendyll opened the door and went out to the guest room to greet Michael. Rassendyll held out his hand and Michael stood up slowly and took it, then he showed him into the Princess's guest room.***
71. Why did Rassendyll apologise to the Duke? - ***He said that he didn't know the Duke was waiting.***
72. How did the Princess attract Rassendyll's attention to the mistake he made?
- ***She jumped up and told him that Michael would be very angry because he hadn't asked him to come in.***
73. What did Rassendyll expect the Duke would do when he arrived? Why? - ***He expected he would enter the guest room because he didn't know that no one was allowed to enter without the king's permission.***
74. How does Rassendyll know that the Six Men also knew his secret?
- ***When he spoke to Detchard, in English in a strange accent, he smiled. That means Detchard knew his secret. If he knew, surely all the Six Men knew as well.***
75. Was Michael still angry with the king, Rassendyll, even after the king apologized? How do you know? - ***Yes, he was. Because he thanked him coldly. The king could see on his face that he was still angry. Michael was not good at hiding his feelings.***
76. What could Rassendyll see Michael was pretending?
- ***Rassendyll could see he was trying to pretend that he thought Rassendyll was the real King.***
77. How did Rassnedyll explain the injury on his hand to Michael? - ***He said it was an animal bite.***
78. What did Rassnedyll tell Michael would happen the next time the animal bit him?
- ***It will be knocked on the head and killed.***
79. Who was the animal Rassnedyll was talking about? - ***He was talking about Michael.***
80. Why did Rassendyll change the subject with Duke Michael?
- ***He was worried that Michael would say something he did not want to hear.***
81. About what did Rassendyll talk with Michael after talking about the dangerous animal?
Rassendyll told him: 1- How fine his soldiers were. 2- He thanked him for the splendid coronation 3- He thanked him for the great time he had had at the hunting lodge in the forest.
82. How did the Duke behave and feel when Rassnedyll reminded him with the hunting lodge?
- ***He jumped to his feet and angrily walked towards the door.***
83. How did Duke Michael describe the three men who came to see the king?
- ***These gentlemen were the most loyal and honest of the King's servants, and were his great friends.***
84. Who were the three men that came to see the king?
- ***De Gautet, a tall, thin French man with straight hair.***
- ***Bersonin, the Belgian, who was large and about thirty years old.***
- ***Detchard, the Englishman, who had a thin face, strong shoulders and very short hair. He looked like a good fighter and a bad character.***
85. When did Rassendyll know that Detchard knew his secret?
- ***When he spoke to him in English with a pretend foreign accent and Rassendyll saw him smile.***
86. If Detchard knew Rassendyll's secret. What did that mean?
- ***Surely all the Six Men knew as well.***

Quotations

1. "You are mad. The plan is too dangerous."
a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
b) On what occasion was it said? - ***When Sapt asked Rassendyll to pretend to be king again.***
c) Why did the speaker think it was a mad plan?
- ***Because Duke Michael knew he was not the real king.***
2. "Listen! If you are a man, you can save the king. Go back and pretend to be him"
a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
b) How was it possible for the addressee to save the king?
- ***By pretending to be the king, Michael would not be able to hurt the real king.***
c) Where was the king at that time? - ***He was imprisoned in the castle of Zenda.***

3. "But the Duke knows where the real king is and all his men know!"
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**
 - Where was the real king? - **The real king was locked in the castle of Zenda.**
 - Why was the king there? - **Because the Duke wanted to be the king instead of him.**
4. "Listen! We have got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 - Who did the speaker talk about? - **About Michael and his men.**
 - What did the speaker mean by "We have got them"?
- **He meant that they couldn't tell anybody that Rassendyll was not the real king.**
5. "Surely someone in Strelsau will realise I'm not the real king."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**
 - Why did the speaker have to be a king again?
- **Because the real king was kidnapped and locked in the castle of Zenda.**
6. "Of course it's a risk but we must have a king in Strelsau."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll**
 - What was the risk? - **Playing the role of the real king after Michael had known the truth.**
 - Why did they have to have a king in Strelsau?
- **To prevent Michael from being the king and to be able to save the real king.**
7. "If the real king's already dead, then you shall stay king!"
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 - Where was the real king then? - **He was imprisoned in the castle of Zenda.**
 - Why was it possible for the addressee to replace the king? - **Because they were alike in shape.**
8. "I don't think they will do anything to him if you're in the capital."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 - Who did "him" refer to? - **The real king (Rudolf Elphberg).**
 - Why did the speaker think so?
- **Because they knew that if they had killed the real king, Rassendyll would have stayed king.**
9. "Let's go to Strelsau. We'll be caught if we stay here."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 - What does "here" refer to? - **The hunting lodge in the forest.**
 - Who would arrest them? Why? - **Duke Michael and his men will arrest them because they knew that he kidnapped the real king and to prevent Rassendyll from being the king again.**
10. "Good man! I'll go and get the horses."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt and Rassendyll.**
 - Why did the speaker describe the addressed person as "Good man"?
- **Because he agreed to be the king again.**
 - Where were they then? - **In the hunting lodge.**
11. "Look out of the window."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 - Where was that window? - **In the hunting lodge.**
 - What did they see when they looked out of the window?
- **A big group of Michael's men: four were on horses, another four or five were walking. They seemed to be carrying spades, coming to the house to bury Josef's body.**
12. "We should make sure that some of those evil men join Josef."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**
 - Who were those evil men? - **Michael's men.**
 - What did the speaker mean by join Josef? - **He meant to kill them as they had killed Josef.**
13. "As a soldier, I have had a lot of fights like this. I'll show you what to do."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt and Rassendyll.**
 - What was the result of that fight?
- **Rassendyll and Sapt killed two of them, and injured others.**
14. "Go and get the body."
- Who said that? To whom? - **One of Michael's men to the others.**

- b) Whose body was it? - **Josef's body.**
 c) When was that person killed? - **When Michael's men went to kidnap the king.**
15. "Well done! That was very brave. Do you think they saw who you were?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt and Rassendyll.**
 b) What was "very brave"? - **Attacking Michael's men.**
 c) What difference would be made if they knew them?
 - **Michael would have something to worry about.**
16. "Yes, one of them said" It's the king," before I pushed him off his horse."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**
 b) Who does "them" refer to? - **Michael's men.**
17. "Good! That will give Michael something to worry about."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt and Rassendyll.**
 b) What thing would Michael worry about? - **One of his men recognized Rassendyll (the king).**
18. "Is all well, sir?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Freyler to Sapt.**
 b) Was all really well? Why? Why not? - **No, because the real king was kidnapped.**
19. "But the king's hurt?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Freyler to Sapt.**
 b) How was the king hurt? - **He was shot by one of Michael's men.**
 c) What explanation did Sapt give for the king being hurt? - **He said that he caught his finger in a door.**
20. "He caught his finger in a door. Now remember, say nothing about this."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Freyler.**
 b) Who does "he" refer to? - **Rassendyll (the king).**
 c) Was the speaker telling the truth? How do you know?
 - **No. Rassendyll was shot by one of Michael's men.**
21. All young men like to ride their horses now and then. Why not the king?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Freyler.**
 b) Why did the speaker say so? - **To give a reason for the king's going out at that time.**
22. "Freyler's a good servant, but sometimes it's best not to trust even the best of men."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 b) Why was it best for them not to trust even the best of men? - **Because they were in a difficult situation. Rassendyll was not the real king and the real one was imprisoned in the castle of Zenda.**
23. "My king, you're safe! I'm so pleased."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll (the king).**
 b) What did the speaker do when he said this? Why?
 - **He bowed because he thought Rassendyll was the real king.**
24. "Even Fritz thinks you are the real king..... I think we can do it."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 b) What made the speaker say so? - **Because Fritz bowed when he greeted Rassendyll (the king).**
25. "But what's happened to your hand? Are you hurt?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
 b) What happened to the addressed person's hand? - **One of Michael's men shot him in it.**
26. "It's nothing serious. What's more important is what we have to tell you."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Fritz.**
 b) What did the speaker mean by "It's nothing serious"?
 - **He meant that the injury in his hand was not serious.**
 c) What was more important? - **The real king was kidnapped and locked in the castle of Zenda. Josef was killed. Michael knew of their plans as one of his men saw Rassendyll.**
27. "What is it? Where is the real king?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll and Sapt.**
 b) Where was the real king? - **The real king was kidnapped and locked in the castle of Zenda.**
28. "Be quiet. Don't speak so loudly. People will hear us."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Fritz.**

- b) Why was the addressed person not quiet? - ***Because the real king did not come back.***
29. "Quick! Go into the bedroom. Cover yourself up so people think you are sleep."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
- b) When did the speaker say so? - ***When Princess Flavia's servant knocked on the door.***
- c) Why wasn't the addressed person in bed?
- ***Because he went with Sapt to bring back the real king from the hunting lodge during the night.***
30. "Send her my thanks, and tell her that I've never felt better in my life."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the princess's servant.***
- b) Where did this conversation take place? - ***In the king's bedroom.***
- c) Why did the servant go there?
- ***Because the princess sent him to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.***
31. "The king's had a good long sleep,"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to the servant of Princess Flavia.***
- b) Was the speaker telling the truth? How do you know?
- ***No, because they spent the whole night on the way to and from the hunting lodge.***
32. "Tell me, is the king dead?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.***
- b) What made him ask this question? - ***The real king did not return with Sapt and Rassendyll.***
33. "We don't think so, but Duke Michael's holding him prisoner."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Fritz.***
- b) Why didn't the speaker think so?
- ***Because they knew of his plans and if he had done so, Rassendyll would have stayed king.***
34. "Rest? No! We must not waste any time! Shouldn't we plan how to attack Michael?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Fritz to Rassendyll and Sapt.***
- b) Why should they plan how to attack Michael? - ***To set the real king free.***
35. "Let's take things slowly.....We are not going to do anything dangerous."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Fritz.***
- b) Why were they not going to do anything dangerous?
- ***Because they wanted to wait to see what the Duke did.***
36. "So aren't we going to do anything?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Fritz to Rassendyll and Sapt.***
- b) What did the speaker want to do? - ***He wanted to attack Michael.***
37. "He can't accuse Rassendyll of anything."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Fritz.***
- b) Who does "He" refer to? - ***Duke Michael.***
- c) Why couldn't he accuse Rassendyll of anything?
- ***Because people would know that he'd kidnapped the King***
38. "And we can't accuse him in public without admitting that I'm not the real king."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt and Fritz.***
- b) Why couldn't the speaker accuse him in public of anything?
- ***Because he would have to admit not being the real king.***
39. "So no one can do anything! It's a stalemate!"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.***
- b) What did he mean by "It's a stalemate!"?
- ***He meant that neither they nor the Duke can reveal each other's plan.***
40. "But wait. Half of Michael's six men are in Strelsau with the Duke."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Fritz to Sapt and Rassendyll.***
- b) What does this mean? - ***That meant that the king was alive.***
41. "That means the king must be alive"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.***
- b) Why did the speaker deduce so? - ***Because only Half of Michael's six men are with the Duke.***
42. "Excuse me, but who are the six men?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt and Fritz.***

b) Who are the six men?

- ***They're six special soldiers who Michael keeps in his house at all times. They're completely loyal to him. Three are from Ruritania, one is Belgian, one French, and one's from England.***

43. "They will do whatever Michel asks them to do."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll and Fritz.***

b) Who are "They"? - ***The six men.***

44. Would they try to kill me?

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt***

b) Who would try to kill Rassendyll? - ***The famous six men.***

45. "Without a doubt. Which three are here in Strelsau?"

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll and Fritz***

b) Which three were in Strelsau? - ***The three foreigners (De Gautet-Bersoni-Detchard).***

46. "So they weren't the men we saw at the hunting lodge,"

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***

b) How many men did they see at the hunting lodge? - ***Eight or nine men.***

47. "I wish they were. Because then there'd only be four of them not six of them."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***

b) Who does "they" refer to? - ***The famous six men.***

c) What did the speaker wish? - ***He wished that the six men were at the hunting lodge.***

48. "You have completely changed since you became king, sir."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).***

b) Why do you think the addressee changed? - ***Because he was not the real king.***

49. "I'm proud to do so. But I think your face has changed."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).***

b) What was the speaker proud to do? - ***She was proud to call him "sir".***

c) Where did this conversation take place? - ***At the home of the princess.***

50. "My brother's back in the city, I hear. He went away for a while, didn't he?"

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the Princess.***

b) Who was his brother? - ***Duke Michael.***

51. "That's good. The nearer he is to me the better."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the Princess.***

b) Who did the speaker talk about? - ***About Michael.***

c) Why did the speaker think so? - ***So that he could know what he was doing.***

52. "Do you want him to be near so that you know what he is doing."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).***

b) Who were they talking about? - ***Michael.***

53. "We need to help and support each other."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the Princess.***

b) Who needed to help and support each other? - ***Rassendyll (the king) and Michael.***

54. "It's him. He's coming here now."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).***

b) Who were they talking about? - ***Michael.***

c) What does "here" refer to? - ***The home of the princess.***

55. "You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).***

b) Who were they talking about? - ***Michael.***

c) Why would he be very angry? - ***Because Rassendyll hadn't asked him to come in. He'd***

56. "What do you mean? How am I making him angry?"

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the Princess***

b) How was the speaker making him angry?"

- ***Because he hadn't asked him to come in. He'd been waiting outside the room for a long time.***

57. "He's been waiting outside the room for a long time."

a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).***

- b) Who had been waiting outside the room for a long time? - **Michael.**
58. How funny you are! No one can enter without your permission."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).**
- b) Why was the addressed person funny? - **Because he said that Michael could come in. He was supposed to know that no one could enter without his permission.**
59. "I was never very good at remembering all the rules, but I'll go and get him myself at once."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to the Princess.**
- b) What made the speaker say so?
- **He didn't ask Michael to come in and kept him waiting for a long time.**
60. "Brother, I'm so sorry. I didn't know you were waiting."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Duke Michael.**
- b) Why did the speaker apologise to the addressee? - **Because he hadn't asked him to come in. - - He'd been waiting outside the room for a long time.**
- c) Where was the addressee waiting? - **Outside the guest room.**
61. "Yes. An animal bit me."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Duke Michael**
- b) Which animal did the speaker mean? - **Michael and his men.**
- c) Did the addressee (Michael) understand that hint? تلميح - **Yes, he did**
62. "Is there any danger from the bite?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king).**
- b) Which bite did the speaker mean? - **The injury in Rassendyll's hand.**
- c) Was it really a bite? - **No, it was a bullet of a gun which was shot by one of Michael's men.**
63. "Not from this, but if I gave him the chance to bite again, it would be different."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to the Princess**
- b) Who did the word him refer to? - **It referred to Michael.**
- c) Did he deserve to be called an animal? - **Yes, as he wanted to kill his brother**
64. "No. We are waiting to see if his bite's poisonous."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to the Princess**
- b) Whose bite did the speaker talk about? - **The bite of the animal (Michael).**
- c) Was it really a bite? - **No, it was a bullet of a gun which was shot by one of Michael's men.**
65. "He will be knocked on his head."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Duke Michael.**
- b) Who will be hit? - **Duke Michael will be hit by Rassendyll.**
- c) What did these words mean? - **They meant that Rassendyll defied the Duke.**
66. "But he might bite again."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **The Duke to Rassendyll**
- b) What did these words mean? - **They meant that the Duke threatened Rassendyll.**
67. "Three of my friends would very much like to meet you."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **The Duke to Rassendyll**
- b) Who were these men? - **The three foreigners of the famous six.**
- c) Why did the speaker introduce them to the addressee? - **To frighten him.**
68. "These gentlemen are the most loyal and honest of the king's servants."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **The Duke to Rassendyll**
- b) Who were the gentlemen? - **The three foreigners of the famous six.**
- c) Were they really loyal to the king? - **No, they weren't.**
69. "I'm very pleased to meet them all."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to the Duke and his three men.**
- b) Was the speaker really pleased? - **No, he hated to meet them as they were criminals**

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1-The Duke's men come to the hunting lodge to kill Sapt and Rassendyll.
- 2-One of Michael's men thinks that Rassendyll is the King.
- 3-Fritz thinks at first that the Mr Rassendyll has returned.
- 4-Rassendyll finds the work of being a King easy.
- 5- Rassendyll finds the work of being a King easy.

- 6-Rassendyll tells all of his plans to Sapt and Fritz.
- 7-Rassendyll wants to make Michael angry by not asking him to enter the room.
- 8- Rassendyll realises that neither Michael nor his Six Men also know that he is not the real King.
- 9- Rassendyll's hand is hurt because he was bitten by a wild bird.
- 10- Rassendyll refused to continue to pretend to be the King.
- 11-Sapt wants to attack Duke Michael right away.
- 12- Rassendyll thought Sapt was wise when suggested going back to Strelsau.
- 13- They were sure that the Duke and his men would say something about Rassendyll.
- 14- Rassendyll wanted to be away from the poor people of Ruritania while he was acting the king.
- 15- Rassendyll wanted his brother to be nearer to know his plans.
- 16- They were sure the king was killed because only three of the six men were in the capital.
- 17- Rassendyll allowed the Duke to enter as soon as he arrived at Princess Flavia's palace.
- 18- Rassendyll could do the king's duties including signing the documents as he was well.
- 19- Rassendyll's signature was exactly like The king's.
- 20- Flavia said that keeping the Duke waiting would make him happy.
- 21- Rassendyll knew that everybody could enter the place he was at without his permission.
- 22- To cover up his mistake the palace, Rassendyll gave the Duke permission to enter.
- 23- The duke introduced the leaders of the army to Mr Rassendyll.
- 24- The Duke was very clever at hiding his feeling, so Rassendyll couldn't know he was angry.
- 25- Duke Michael always showed that Rassendyll wasn't the real king.
- 26- Rassendyll said he was hurt by a bird that he would kill if it attacked him again.
- 27- Rassendyll suggested leaving the hunting lodge before any of the Duke's saw them.
- 29- After the fight was the Duke's men, Rassendyll hurt his leg from a sword.
- 30- Rassendyll used the same old servants of the king with him in the palace.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer these questions.

1. What does Sapt plan to do if the real King is dead?
- He plans that Rassendyll will remain as King.
2. Why do Michael's men have spades? What does it mean that they were going to "hide their evil work"?
- They are going to bury Josef's body so no one will know about his murder.
3. What does Rassendyll mean that some of those evil men should join Josef?
- Rassendyll means that some of them should be killed. They should join Josef in death.
4. Why does Sapt say to the servant at the secret door "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"
- He wants the servant to think that the King was just out riding for fun. He doesn't want him to know anything about where they were. Sapt says it's best not to trust people too much.
5. Why does Rassendyll use a new servant who has never met the real King? Who is the servant replacing?
- The new servant would be less likely to realise that Rassendyll is not the real King. The servant is replacing Josef, who was killed by Michael's men.
6. Who are the Six Men? Where are they from? Why are only three in Strelsau?
- They are six special soldiers that Duke Michael keeps in his house all the time. Three are from Ruritania, one is French, one is Belgian, and one is English. Sapt and Fritz assume that if only three are in Strelsau, the other three must be guarding the King.
7. Rassendyll decides to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What are those plans?
- He plans to make himself as popular as he can, and to not say anything bad about Michael. This way, if there were a fight, some of the people would support him (the King) and not Michael. Michael would not become stronger this way.
8. Why does he visit the Princess? What does he do on the way? How do these things make him more popular?
- He wants to get the support of the Princess (for the King). On the way he buys some flowers from a poor girl and pays with a gold coin. Giving the coin makes him look generous to the people. The people like the Princess and seem to want the King to marry her, so visiting her will make the people happy.
9. Why can't Michael come into the room when the King is there? What mistake does Rassendyll make? How does he cover up his mistake?
- Michael can't come into the room without the King's permission (because the King is royal and higher than Michael). Rassendyll does not know

this rule, and he makes the mistake of asking why Michael will be angry (that he isn't asked to enter the room). He covers his mistake by saying that he keeps forgetting all the rules.

10. Rassendyll says that his hand was hurt from an animal bite and that he's waiting to see if the bite is poisonous. He also says that he is sure the animal will try to bite again. Who is he really talking about, and who understands this? - *He is really talking about Michael (his poisoning and kidnapping of the King, and his men's shooting at Rassendyll), and Michael understands this.*

11. How does Rassendyll know that the Six Men also know his secret?

- *He knows because of the way Detchard (the Englishman) smiles at him when he is presented to him. Rassendyll knows that if one of the Six Men knows, they will all know.*

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. The Duke's men come to the hunting lodge to kill Sapt and Rassendyll. (F)

- *They come to bury Josef's body.*

2. One of Michael's men thinks that Rassendyll is the King. (T)

3. Fritz thinks at first that the real King has returned. (T)

4. Rassendyll finds the work of being a King easy. (F) - *He finds it difficult.*

5. Fritz wants to hurry and make plans to attack Michael. (T)

6. Rassendyll tells all of his plans to Sapt and Fritz. (F) - *He keeps some things from them.*

7. Rassendyll wants to make Michael angry by not asking him to enter the room. (F)

- *He doesn't know that Michael can't enter without his permission.*

8. Rassendyll's hand is hurt because he was bitten by an animal. (F)

- *He was shot in the hand, but he tells the Princess that he was bitten.*

9. Rassendyll meets the Six Men. (F) - *He meets only three of them.*

10. Rassendyll realises that Michael's Six Men also know that he is not the real King. (T)

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"You're mad! The plan's too dangerous!"

1. Who says this to whom? - *Rassendyll says this to Colonel Sapt.*

2. Where are they? - *They are at the hunting lodge near Zenda.*

3. What is the dangerous plan?

- *Sapt wants Rassendyll to continue to pretend to be the King and to return to Strelsau that night.*

"We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt."

1. Who says this to whom? - *Sapt says this to Rassendyll.*

2. Why does he say this? - *He is trying to persuade Rassendyll to continue to be the King.*

3. Who is "them"? What does the speaker mean by "We've got them"?

- *"Them" is Duke Michael and his men. The speaker means that they have trapped the Duke and his men. The Duke can't say anything against Rassendyll because he would have to admit that he is guilty of kidnapping the real King.*

"Now remember, say nothing about this. All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

1. Who says this to whom?

- *Sapt says this to (Freyler,) the servant waiting for them outside the secret door to the palace.*

2. Where is the speaker coming from and who is with him?

- *Where was the speaker coming from and who was with him? He was coming from Zenda and Rassendyll (disguised as the King) was with him.*

3. Why does the speaker say this?

- *Why does the speaker say this? He doesn't want the servant to talk about the King's going out. He wants him to think that the King was just out riding (and enjoying himself).*

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

1-What was Sapt's plan when he knew that the king was kidnapped

2-Why did Rassendyll object to Sapt's plan?

3-To save the king, Rassendyll must continue to pretend to be the king. It was for the king's benefit.

4-How was this true?

- 5-Why was Rassendyll against\ opposing the suggestion of pretending to be the king?
- 6-Why did Sapt think the Duke and his men couldn't reveal Rassendyll's secret?
- 7-Why was Rassendyll afraid of continuing the game and pretending to be the king?
- 8-What does Sapt plan to do if the real King is dead?
- 9-Why was sapt sure that the Duke and his men wouldn't hurt\ kill the real king?
- 10-Who did they see coming to the hunting lodge at night? Why did they come?
- 11- What does it mean that they were going to "hide their evil work"?
- 12-When was Rassendyll revengeful?
- 13-How did Rassendyll get his finger injured\ shot?
- 14-Why did they stop on their way back to the palace?
- 15-How did Rassendyll explain this to the farmer?
- 16-What proves that Princes Flavia was worried about the king?
- 17- How did Sapt prepare Rassendyll to continue playing the rule of the king?
- 18-Sapt was always next to Rassendyll while doing his duties. Explain why.
- 19-Why couldn't Rassendyll sign the documents?
- 20-What made rassendyll want to take rest after the meetings?
- 21-It's a stalemate. What did Fritz mean by it's a stalemate?
- 22-What result did Sapt come to when knew that half of the six men were in Strelsau? Why?
- 23-Rassendyll decides to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What are those plans?
- 24- How did Rassendyll make himself popular?
- 25- Where did Rassendyll buy flowers on his way to the home of Falavia? Was it a good idea?
- 26- Why was it a good idea to visit Princess Flavia in his Palace\ home?
- 27- How did Princess Flavia think it was better for the king if Michael was nearer?
- 28- Who else came to visit Princess Flavia? How did Rassendyll feel when he heard the news?
- 29- What did Rassendyll do to correct his mistake with the duke's waiting?
- 30-Why did Rassendyll apologise to the Duke?
- 31- Rassendyll told the duke that an animal bit him. Who was the animal he was talking about?
- 32-Why did Rassendyll change the subject with Duke Michael?
- 33-Who were the three men that came to see the king?
- 34- If Detchard knew Rassendyll's secret. What did that mean? What secret did Rassendyll mean?
- 35- When was Rassendyll in a tight corner\ about to lose his life? How did he escape death?
- 36- What did Rassendyll wish Fritz had told him? What should Fritz have told Rassendyll before going to Flavia's palace?

Quotations

1- "You're mad! The plan's too dangerous!"

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Where are they?
3. What is the dangerous plan?

2- "We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt. "

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Why does he say this?
3. Who is "them"? What does the speaker mean by "We've got them"?

3-"Now remember, say nothing about this. All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Where is the speaker coming from and who is with him?
3. Why does the speaker say this?

4- Rest? No! We mustn't waste any time! Shouldn't we plan how to attack Michael?"

- 1-Who said this to whom? Where were they?
- 2-Why did the speaker want to attack Michael?
- 3-Did they like his plan to attack Micheal?

5- "You're mad!" "The plan's too dangerous!"

- 1-Who is the speaker? What does "you" refer to?
- 2-What plan was the speaker talking about?
- 3- When did he make that plan? Why was it dangerous?

6- Yes, but they can't say anything...Listen! We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt. They cannot say, 'This isn't the real King because we've kidnapped him and killed his servant.' Will they say that?"

- 1-Who is speaking? To whom? What does "they" refer to?
- 2-What can't they say any thing about? Why?
- 3- What did the speaker mean "we've got them"?

7- "I still worry that someone will realise"

1- Who is the speaker to whom is he speaking? Where are they? 2- What is he asked to do?

3- What thing didn't the speaker really want others to realise\ notice?

8- "I'm very pleased to meet them,"

1- What does "I" refer to? What does "them" refer to?

2- Where was the speaker when he said these words?

3- Was he really pleased to meet them? What did he realise when he met them?

9- "Did you kill the animal?" Flavia asked.

1-Who said this to whom was it said? 2- How did the speaker feel when she said these words?

3- What had the animal done? Was it really an animal? What was it?

10- You've hurt your hand"

1- Who said these words? To whom was it said? 2- How did the addressed have his hand hurt?

3- How did the listener explain that injury? What did he say caused that hurt?

11- "You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"

1- Who said these words? To whom was it said?

2- What did the addressed do and would make Micheal angry?

3- Did he do it on purpose? How did explain that wrong action?

12-"You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"

1-Who was the speaker? Where was she at the moment?

2- Why was Michael angry with the king at this moment?

3-What did he expect Michael would do as soon as he arrived? Why did Michael behave that way?

13-" Yes, you're right,". "So that means the King must be alive. If the King were dead, all the Six Men would be here with the Duke

1-Who said this to whom? Where were they at the moment?

2- How did they conclude that the king was still alive? 3- Who are the six men?

14- My King, you're safe! I'm so pleased."

1-Who said this? To whom? When was it said?

2- Was he talking to the real king? Who he speaking to? Was the king safe?

3- What happened to the real king?

15- Oh! Rassendyll?". "But what's happened to your hand? Are you hurt?"

1- Who said this? Where was he? When did he say this?

2- What happened to his hand? How did he get hurt?

3- How did the speaker call Mr Rassendyll when he arrived at the palace?

16- How funny you are,". "You know that no one can enter without your permission."

1-Who said this to whom was it said?

2- What thing did the speaker consider funny here? Did he do that on Purpose?

3- On what occasion was this said? What did he wish Fritz had told him?

17- Freyler's a good servant, but sometimes it's best not to trust even the best of men."

1-Who was the speaker? Who was he talking to? 2- What was Freyler's job?

3- What thing did the speaker not trust Freyler about? What did this show us about the speaker's character?

18- "Quick! Go into the bedroom, take your hat and boots off and climb into bed. Cover yourself up so people think you're asleep."

1- Who said these words? To whom was it said?

2- Why did they ask Rassendyll to do so? Who was coming to visit?

3- What was the king doing before that?

19- "That's good. The nearer he is to me, the better."

1- Who was the speaker? To whom was he talking? 2- Who was he talking about?

3- How did the speaker explain this to the listener?

20-"Do you want him to be near you so that you know what he's doing?"

1- Who said this? To whom was it said? 2- What does "him" refer to?

3- What other reason did the speaker give for wanting him so near? How did the listener feel on hearing that?

21- "What if the King's already dead?"

1- Who said this? To whom? 2- What were they discussing at the moment?

3- What was the answer to the question asked?

22- "Anything is possible, but come, Rassendyll! Let's go to Strelsau. We'll be caught if we stay here."

1- Who said this to whom? Where were they at the moment of speaking?

2- Why were the characters at that place? What went wrong when they arrived?

3- What is possible they are talking about? Why did they have to go to Strelsau?

4- What did they do before they left? What was the result of that?

23- I'd like him to be near me because he's my half-brother. We're family!". "We need to help and support each other. Unfortunately, I've heard he can't stay in Strelsau for very long."

1- Who said this to whom was it said? Who was he talking about?

2- How did the listener feel on hearing this?

3- What reason did the other person give for the king's wish?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1- Rassendyll's head was hit by a bullet.

2- Sapt bowed to Rassendyll thinking that he was the real king.

3- Michael's men came to the lodge with guns to bury Josef's body.

4- Antoinette thought that the king had already changed.

5- Michael had killed the real king.

6- Freyler was a prince to Sapt.

7- Sapt's plan was too safe.

8- It was unnecessary to have a king in Strelsau.

9- Michael's men wanted to burn Josef's body.

10- Sapt and Rassendyll took revenge for killing the Duke.

11- Rassendyll escaped through a wall between the men.

12- Rassendyll covered his face when they rested at a soldier's farm.

13- The farmer was cruel to them.

14- The streets of the town was very busy.

15- Princess Flavia sent her brother to the king.

16- The famous six were loyal to the king.

17- As Michael left three of the famous six at Zenda, the real king must have been dead.

18- All the famous six were foreigners.

19- People of England wanted the king to marry the Princess.

20- Michael was happy when Rassendyll let him wait.

21- Rassendyll told the Princess that he was bitten by an owl.

22- Michael told Rassendyll that the animal would try to reward him again.

23- Rassendyll said that he would knock the animal on his back.

24- Part of Rassendyll's plan was to make the Duke as popular as he could.

25- The Princess was hated by the people.

26- Rassendyll couldn't sign documents because of his damaged leg.

27- Detchard was a French man.

Chapter 5

aloud	بصوت عالي	fire	يطلق نار	point at	يشير إلى
ambitions	طموحات	follow	يتبع	popularity	شعبية
argument	جدال / مناقشة	footsteps	اثار اقدام	power	قوة
arrange	يرتب	forever	للأبد	protest	يحتج
authority	سلطة	forgive	يسامح / يغفر	punish	يعاقب
avenue	طريق مشجر	fright	رعب / خوف	real	حقيقي
ball	حفلة رقص	gap	مخرج / فتحة	reluctantly	بتردد
bandage	ضمادة	generous	كريم / سخي	responsibilities	مسؤوليات
be over	ينتهي	growing	متزايدة	rules	قواعد
bin	سلة قمامة	imprison	يسجن / يحبس	run	يدير
borders	حدود (دولة)	iron	حديد	shots	طلقات
candle	شمعة	leader	قائد	situation	موقف
Certainly	بالتأكيد	leafy	مورقة	society	المجتمع
chief	رئيس	look so like	يشبه جدا	somewhere	مكان ما
conversation	حوار	loyal	مخلص	steps	درجات سلم
cover up	يغطي	marshal	مشير	summer house	منزل صيفي
criminal	مجرم	messenger	مبعوث / رسول	surely	بالتأكيد
decisions	قرارات	murder	يقتل	trap	مصيدة / يحتجز
definitely	بكل تأكيد	normal	عادي	trust	يثق
directions	اتجاهات	notice	يلاحظ	truth	الحقيقة
disappear	يختفي	occasional	عرضي	watch	يحرس
drawbridge	جسر متحرك	offer	عرض	wherever	أيما
escape	يهرب	orders	أوامر	whisper	يهمس
fair	عادل	outwards	نحو الخارج	woman's voice	صوت امرأة
fall down	يقع	permission	إذن	worry	يقلق

Questions & Answers

- Rassendyll had contradicting متناقضة feelings on leaving the Princess's Palace. Illustrate.
- *He wasn't sorry to say goodbye to the Duke and his men but he was sad to say goodbye to the princess.*
- What did the princess tell him when he was going to leave her palace?
- *She warned him to be careful and to think what his life meant to the people of Ruritania.*
- What did Rassendyll remember when the princess warned him?
- *He remembered what Rose had said about his brother Robert in England: "He realises his position in society brings with it responsibilities."*
- How was Rassendyll's life changed in Ruritania? - *He always wanted to have a quiet life but he suddenly realised how many responsibilities he had in Ruritania.*
- Why didn't anyone seem to notice that Rassendyll was not the real king?
- *Because Rassendyll looked so like the king.*
- How did Rassendyll act when he made mistakes?
- *He pretended that he had forgotten rules or people that he had met.*
- When do we know that Rassendyll became popular with the Ruritaniens? - *When he hoped that his popularity with the people of Ruritania would help them to forgive his occasional bad decisions.*
- How did Sapt know that the real king was at the Castle of Zenda?
- *Because the rest of the six men (Rupert- Lauengram and Krafstein) were all there. The drawbridge was nearly always kept up. No one went into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael.*
- What did Sapt call (Rupert, Lauengram and Krafstein)?
- *Sapt called them the three biggest criminals in Ruritania.*
- Why wouldn't it be a good idea for Rassendyll to go to Zenda?
- *Because he would be imprisoned there.*
- Why did Sapt order six men to follow Rassendyll wherever he went in Strelsau?
- *To guard Rassendyll as it would be easy for Michael's men to catch him. It would be useful for Michael if Rassendyll disappeared to kill the real king.*

12. From whom was the letter given to Rassendyll by Sapt? - *From Antoinette de Mauban.*
13. Why was the letter sent to Rassendyll? - *It was mainly a plot مؤامرة from Michael to kill Rassendyll but Antoinette de Mauban helped him.*
14. What did the letter warn him about?
- *If Rassendyll (the king) didn't go to the summer house, his life would be in danger.*
15. What would happen if Rassendyll showed the letter to anyone?
- *It would put Antoinette de Mauban in great danger as Michael would punish her.*
16. According to Sapt and Rassendyll, who wrote that letter? Why?
- *Michael wrote that letter to trap Rassendyll and kill him.*
17. What was written on the back of the letter? - *"If you don't believe me, ask Colonel Sapt what woman has been a guest of the Duke .Ask if her name begins with A."*
18. What did Sapt know about Antoinette de Mauban?
- *Sapt heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael. She had a great argument with Michael .She was staying somewhere in Strelsau.*
19. How could she be useful to them? - *she had information about Michael.*
20. Why did Rassendyll insist on meeting Antoinette as the letter asked?
- *He told Sapt that he believed that woman. Everyday they left the king imprisoned, there was more danger. They had to move quickly.*
21. What did Rassendyll ask Sapt to do when he went to meet De Mauban?
- *To wait outside the gate.*
22. How was the room Rassendyll entered in the summer house?
- *The room was lit by a small candle. It was almost empty except for a small iron table and two chairs. Antoinette was in front of him and her servant was behind her.*
23. How far was Antoinette De Mauban a reliable person?
- *She warned him that in 20 minutes, three men would come to kill him.*
24. According to Antoinette, what was Michael's wicked plan خطة شريرة to be king?
a) *To kill Rassendyll and to take his body into the old town to be found.*
b) *Michael would arrest Sapt and Fritz for murdering Rassendyll.*
c) *A messenger would be sent to Zenda and the real king would be murdered too.*
25. Why did Antoinette help Rassendyll? - *She didn't like to see people being killed.*
26. How did Antoinette try to save Rassendyll's life?
- *She told him to climb the ladder and run as fast as he could.*
27. What would Antoinette tell the Duke's men if they didn't find Rassendyll?
- *She would tell them that Rassendyll didn't come to the house.*
28. Why couldn't Antoinette complete telling Rassendyll about the king's place?
- *As the three foreigners of the six men arrived.*
29. When did Antoinette ask Rassendyll not to trust the three famous?
- *When they told Rassendyll that they wanted to make him an offer and to let them in.*
30. What was the offer which Detchard talked about?
- *They could offer Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and 50000 English pounds.*
31. What did Rassendyll say about their offer?
- *He said that their offer was generous but in fact he didn't trust them.*
32. Rassendyll was so clever that he could escape from the three foreigners. Illustrate
- *He asked Detchard to open the door and while Detchard was doing that .Rassendyll ran at him as fast as he could holding the iron table in front of him to protect himself.*
33. Rassendyll owed his life to the iron table. Discuss.
- *The three men fired at Rassendyll but he was protected by the top of the iron table.*
34. Rassendyll was intelligent to use the iron table as a weapon. Illustrate.
- *He used it to defend himself against their guns. He also hit them with it so all the three men fell down the steps .Rassendyll ran away firing his gun behind him.*
35. How did Rassendyll escape from the place?
- *He climbed the ladder which Antoinette told him about and in seconds he climbed over the wall .*
36. Why was Sapt surprised that Rassendyll was safe? - *As the three men were too dangerous.*
37. What was the latest report from the Chief of Police about Michael?

- *The report said that The Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda. An hour later he was followed by De gautet.Bersonin and Detchard who had a bandage.*
38. How did Rassendyll know that his shot was a good one?
- *Detchard had a bandage around his arm*
39. What did the report say about the king and the princess?
- *The people weren't happy that the king had yet to marry the princess and if he didn't marry her it would be better if the Princess married the Duke.*
40. Ruritania was more important to Sapt than feelings. Discuss.
- *Sapt told Rassendyll that he had to ask to marry the Princess.*
41. What was the ball like? - *It was a great success.*
42. What was the Princess's opinion after a few weeks of the coronation?
- *The Princess was very pleased for him as everyone said that he was doing a very good job.*
43. When did Rassendyll know that Rose's words were true? - *When Rassendyll pretended to be the king, he realised that position in society had responsibilities.*
44. What second mistake did Rassendyll make when he was talking to the Princess?
- *He told her that when he was younger, he didn't think he needed to worry about society, he thought that it was someone else's job.*
45. Why did Rassendyll realise that he made a mistake?
- *Because the Princess looked very surprised at his strange philosophy about life.*
46. Why did Rassendyll want to tell the Princess the truth?
- *Because she should know what had happened to her future husband.*
47. What prevented Rassendyll from telling the Princess the truth?
- *Because Sapt suddenly appeared at the window.*
48. Sapt was always at Rassendyll's side to stop him from making mistakes. Discuss.
- *Sapt appeared suddenly and stopped Rassendyll from telling the truth to the Princess.*
49. When did Rassendyll realise that his game had gone too far to go back?
- *When he was welcomed by other important people at the ball, he realised that he couldn't tell anyone who he really was or they would think he was mad.*
50. Rassendyll was a good faithful man. Illustrate. - *Although he could arrange for the Duke and the real king to be killed, he decided to go to Zenda to rescue the king.*
51. Why did Rassendyll decide to rescue the king?
- *Rassendyll saw that it wasn't fair for the people of Ruritania and it wasn't fair for the princess, either to continue pretending to be the king.*
52. How did Sapt praise Rassendyll when he decided to rescue the real king? Why?
- *Sapt told him that he was a good man.*
53. Why did Rassendyll want to see Princess Flavia again?
- *To warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed it to be.*
54. Who did the Princess receive the two letters from? - *One letter was from Michael who invited her to visit Zenda. The 2nd letter was from Antoinette de Mauban asking the Princess not to accept any invitations from Michael and not to go anywhere without many guards.*
55. Why did Antoinette ask the Princess to show the letter to the leader of Ruritania?
- *Antoinette knew that Rassendyll would know her handwriting and would trust her.*
56. Antoinette was a positive helpful for Rassendyll and the princess .Explain.
- *Antoinette revealed Michael's plans to Rassendyll and saved him in time. She warned the Princess from meeting the duke in order not to be kidnapped.*
57. What was Rassendyll's plan to save Princess Flavia from Michael's plan?
- *He would order guards to watch her. He asked her not to go to Zenda saying she was ill.*
58. Who did Rassendyll trust to guard the Princess? - *Marshal Strakencz.*
59. What orders did the Rassendyll give to the Marshall?
- *Rassendyll asked Marshall Strakencz to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her as Rassendyll was worried about the Duke's ambitions.*
60. Why would Rassendyll send the Marshal a message every evening?
- *To make the Marshal sure he was still alive*
61. How did Rassendyll plan the future of Ruritania if he failed to rescue the king?

- a) *The Marshall would have the authority السلطة to say that he was the head of Strelsau.*
 b) *If the Duke didn't allow the Marshall to see the king in 24 hours, the Marshall would say that the king was dead.*
 c) *The Marshall had to tell the people that Princess Flavia would be the ruler of Ruritania.*

Quotations

1. "Rudolf, be careful, won't you?"
 - a) Who said that? - *Princess Flavia.*
 - b) Why do you think the speaker says this?
- *Because he endangered his life by walking alone through the old part of the city and in the forest.*
 - c) What do these words show about the character of the speaker?
- *She was kind and she cared for the king.*
2. "Be careful of what "
 - a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Princess Flavia.*
 - b) Where did this conversation take place? - *In the palace of the Princess.*
3. "I can't say. But think what your life means to the people of Ruritania."
 - a) Who said this to whom? - *Princess Flavia said this to the King (Rassendyll).*
 - b) Where was this said? - *It was said at Princess Flavia's palace.*
 - c) What did the speaker mean when he/she said 'I can't say'?
- *She knew that the King's life was in danger because he had enemies who wanted to get rid of him.*
4. "How on earth had I got myself into such a situation?"
 - a) Who said this? - *Rudolf Rassendyll.*
 - b) Which situation was the speaker referring to? - *Pretending to be the King of Ruritania.*
 - c) What was wrong with 'such a situation'?
- *Pretending to be a King was hard work for him. He wasn't used to such hard work. He always wanted to have a quiet life. Moreover, as a King, he had many responsibilities.*
5. "Here's a letter for you. From the writing, I think it's from a woman. I also have some important news."
 - a) Who said this to whom? - *Sapt said this to Rassendyll.*
 - b) Who sent that letter? - *Antoinette de Mauban sent that letter.*
 - c) What was the important news the speaker had? - *The important news was that the real King was at the Castle of Zenda where he was guarded by three of Michael's men.*
6. "I also have some important news "
 - a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
 - b) What was that important news? - *They knew that the King was at the Castle of Zenda.*
 - c) How did they get this news?
- *They asked where the rest of the Six Men were, and found out that they were all there in the castle*
7. "We now know that the king is at the Castle of Zenda"
 - a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll.*
 - b) How did the king go there? - *He was kidnapped and locked in the castle by Michael's men.*
 - c) What for was the king there? - *He was imprisoned there because Michael wanted to be the king.*
8. "We found out they were at the castle."
 - a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 - b) Who were at the castle? Why? - *The rest of the famous six to guard the real king.*
9. "The three biggest criminals in Ruritania."
 - a) Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 - b) Who were those criminal? - *Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert of Hentzau.*
10. "Do you think the king's definitely there."
 - a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt.*
 - b) What does "there" refer to? - *The castle of Zenda.*
11. "That's not normal. No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael."
 - a) Who said this to whom? - *Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.*
 - b) What wasn't normal at the Castle of Zenda?

- **The drawbridge was nearly always kept up to prevent anyone from going into the building.**

c) Why wasn't anyone allowed into the building?

- **Because the King was held prisoner there. They didn't want anyone to try to set the King free.**

12. "No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael."

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) What was that building? - **The castle of Zenda.**

13. "Then I must go to Zenda."

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) Why must the speaker go to Zenda? - **To save the king who was locked there.**

14. "That wouldn't be good idea."

a) Who was the speaker? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) Which idea did the speaker reject **يرفض**? - **Going to the castle to free the King.**

c) Why wasn't it a good idea? - **As the Duke's men would kill or imprison him.**

15. "You'll probably stay there for ever if you do."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) What did the speaker mean when he said this?

- **He meant that if Rassendyll went to Zenda, Michael and his men would kill or imprison him.**

c) Why did the addressed person want to go to Zenda?

- **To rescue the King who was held prisoner there.**

16. "What's worrying you?"

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) What was worrying the addressee? - **Six people were following him everywhere he went.**

17. "Tell me, why is it that wherever I go in the capital, I'm followed by six people."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) Where was this said? - **This was said in the royal palace.**

c) Why was the speaker followed by six people? - **To protect him from Duke Michael and his men.**

18. "Because I have ordered them to follow you,"

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll**

b) Why did they follow Rassendyll? - **To guard him and protect him from Michael's men.**

19. "It'd be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game is over."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) Why would it be useful for Michael if that person disappeared?

- **Because Michael would have the chance to take the crown after getting rid of the King.**

c) How did the speaker try to help the addressed person?

- **He had six men follow Rudolf Rassendyll wherever he went in.**

20. "I don't need such help. I can look after myself."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) What did the addressed person do to help the speaker?

- **He ordered six men to follow the speaker wherever he went.**

c) Did the speaker really need 'such help'? Why? Why not?

- **Yes, he needed it because Michael and his men wanted to kill him and the King to take the crown.**

21. "Anyone of them could catch you easily."

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll**

b) Who could catch him easily? - **The three foreigners of the famous six**

22. "Yes, and Michael could write a very good letter."

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) What does he/she mean by this? - **He meant that the letter was written by the Duke or at his orders.**

c) Was the speaker right? How do you know?

- **Yes, he was. Antoinette de Mauban told Rassendyll that she wrote that letter to him at the Duke's orders. In twenty minutes, three men would be there to kill him.**

23. "If the King wants to know something important, please do what I ask..."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Antoinette de Mauban said this in her letter to Rudolf Rassendyll.**

b) What did the speaker ask the addressed person to do? Why? - **She asked him to go to the summer house alone because she wanted to tell him something very important.**

- c) What would happen if the addressed person didn't do what the speaker asked?
- ***His life would be in danger.***

24. "Do not show this letter to anyone or it will put a woman in great danger."

- a) Who said this to whom? - ***Antoinette de Mauban said this in her letter to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
b) What kind of danger would the woman be in? - ***Duke Michael will punish her.***
c) Where did the speaker want the addressed person to go? Why?

- ***She wanted him to meet her at a summer house in Strelsau to tell him something very important.***

25. "Ask him what woman has been a guest of the Duke. Ask if her name begins with A."

- a) Who said this to whom? - ***Antoinette de Mauban said this in her letter to Rudolf Rassendyll.***
b) Who does the pronoun 'him' refer to? - ***Colonel Sapt.***
c) Why was the addressed person suspicious of what the speaker said?

- ***He thought that the person who wrote the letter was Duke Michael and not Antoinette de Mauban. He believed that Michael wanted to trap him.***

26. "It must be Antoinette de Mauban "

- a) Who said this? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
b) How did Rassendyll come to that conclusion? توصل لهذا الاستنتاج

- ***The woman said she had been a guest of the Duke and her name began with A.***

- c) Why did Antoinette want Rassendyll to go to her summer house?

- ***To tell him something important about his life.***

27. "I've heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael."

- a) Who said this to whom? - ***Sapt said this to Rassendyll.***
b) When was this said? - ***When Rassendyll received a letter from Antoinette de Mauban.***
c) How could that woman be useful to Rudolf Rassendyll and Sapt?

- ***She could give them information about Michael and help them to set the King free.***

28. "People say that she had a great argument with Michael."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
b) Who does "she" refer to? - ***Antoinette de Mauban.***

29. "So she could be useful to us,"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
b) Who does "she" refer to? - ***Antoinette de Mauban.***
c) How could she be useful to them? - ***She could be useful if she knew information about the kidnapped king and Michael's plans.***

30. "Perhaps she would be useful if she had information about Michael. However, I believe that Michael wrote that letter."

- a) Who said this to whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
b) Which letter is the speaker talking about?
- ***The letter that Antoinette de Mauban sent to Rassendyll.***
c) Why did the speaker suspect that Michael wrote that letter?
- ***Michael held the King prisoner. He wanted to trap Rudolf Rassendyll and kill him to take the crown.***

31. "So do I! But I'm not certain. I'll go to the house tonight."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
b) What was the speaker not certain about? - ***If it was Michael who had written the letter.***

32. "No, you mustn't. Let me go instead."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
b) What mustn't the addressed person do? - ***He mustn't go to meet Antoinette de Mauban.***
c) Why mustn't the addressed person do so? - ***Because it was a trap to get rid of Rassendyll.***

33. "You can come, too but you must wait outside the gate when I go alone."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
b) Where were they going? - ***To meet Antoinette de Mauban.***

34. "I don't believe this woman and you're mad to go."

- a) Who said this to whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
b) Who was 'this woman'? - ***Antoinette de Mauban.***
c) Why did the addressed person want to go to see 'this woman'? - ***Yes, he needed such help because Michael and his men wanted to kill him and the King to take the crown.***

35. "I believe this woman, and I'll go. Either I go to the house, or I go back to England. We don't have much time."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) Whose house did the speaker want to go to? Why?

- **He wanted to go to Antoinette de Mauban's house as she wanted to tell him something very important.**

c) Did the addressed person believe that woman? Why? - **No, he didn't because he believed that the letter she sent to Rudolf Rassendyll was really written by Duke Michael so as to trap him.**

36. "I'll wait for you here, outside the gate."

a) Who said this? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**

b) Why didn't the speaker want to go inside? - **As Rassendyll was asked to go there alone.**

c) Why did the speaker accompany اصطحب the listener?

- **Lest خشية it should be a trap set by Michael's men.**

37. "Listen! I know who you are and I know you are not the King."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Antoinette de Mauban said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.**

b) Where and when was this said? - **This was said at Antoinette de Mauban's house when Rudolf Rassendyll went there after receiving a letter from her asking him to come to her house.**

c) Who was the real King and where was he at that time?

- **Rudolf Elphberg was the real King and he was held prisoner at the Castle of Zenda.**

d) Why didn't they have much time? - **As in twenty minutes, three men will be there to kill Rassendyll.**

38. "In twenty minutes, three men will be here to kill you."

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Antoinette de Mauban to Rassendyll.**

b) Who were these three men? - **Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet**

39. "Or I will kill them. I suppose they are three of the Duke's six men"

a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Antoinette de Mauban.**

b) Who would the speaker kill? - **Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet**

40. "The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Antoinette de Mauban to Rassendyll.**

b) Who was going to kill that person and why?

- **Duke Michael's men were going to kill Rudolf Rassendyll because he wanted to take the crown.**

c) Why would they take that person's body into the old town? - **The body would be found there and Michael planned to arrest Sapt and Fritz for murdering Rassendyll.**

41. "It will be found and Michael will arrest Colonel Sapt and Captain Fritz von Tarlenheim for murdering you."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Antoinette de Mauban said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.**

b) What was the speaker talking about?

- **She was talking about Michael's plan to kill Rassendyll and accuse Sapt and Fritz of murdering him.**

c) What else would Michael do to get the crown? - **He would kill the King (Rudolf Elphberg).**

42. "I understand. It's a clever plan. But why are you helping me?"

a) Who said this to whom? - **Rassendyll to Antoinette de Mauban.**

b) Which plan was the speaker talking about?

- **Michael's plan to kill him and the King to take the crown.**

c) Why was the addressed person helping the speaker?

- **She said she didn't like to see people being killed.**

43. "I don't like to see people being killed. "

a) Who was the speaker? Who was the addressee? - **Antoinette to Rassendyll.**

b) What was the speaker trying to explain? - **Her reasons for helping Rassendyll.**

c) Where was that said? - **In the summer house.**

44. "You are never safe in this city. You have guards following you, don't you? Well, Michael's men are following them If you are alone, then you'll die."

a) Who said this to whom? - **Antoinette to Rassendyll.**

b) Why were there guards following the addressed person? - **To protect him from Michael's men.**

c) Why would Michael's men try to kill Rudolf Rassendyll?

- **Michael wanted to take the crown, so he needed to kill Rassendyll and the King.**

45. "There you will find a ladder against the wall. Climb it and run as fast as you can."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Antoinette to Rassendyll*
 b) Why should he run? - *To escape from the three men who came to kill him*
46. "I also have a game to play; I'll tell the Duke's men that you never came."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Antoinette to Rassendyll*
 b) Why didn't the speaker tell the Duke's men that?
 - *Because they had arrived before Rassendyll's escape.*
47. "Thank you. You have helped the King tonight. But before I go, tell me something: do you know where he is in the castle?"
 a) Who said this to whom? - *Rassendyll to Antoinette.*
 b) How did the addressed person help the speaker?
 - *She told him about Michael's plan to kill him and the King in order to take the crown.*
 c) What happened while the two people were talking?
 - *Three of Michael's Six Men arrived to kill Rassendyll.*
48. "Do you know where he is in the castle?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Antoinette.*
 b) Who did "he" refer to? - *To the real king*
49. "Yes, I do know. Inside the castle there is a door on the right, and behind that---"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Antoinette to Rassendyll*
 b) Why couldn't Antoinette complete her sentence? - *Because Michael's men arrived*
50. "But listen! They are here! It's late for you to escape."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Antoinette to Rassendyll*
 b) Who did "they" refer to? - *Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet.*
 c) Why was it for Rassendyll to escape? - *Because they came to kill him.*
51. "We want to make you an offer. Will you let us in? We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds."
 a) Who said this to whom? - *Detchard to Rassendyll.*
 b) Why did they make this offer? - *Rassendyll was pretending to be the King and the real King was held prisoner. Michael wanted to get rid of both of them in order to get the crown.*
 c) Did the addressed person accept the offer? What happened after that? - *He pretended that he had accepted the offer. He asked one of Michael's Six Men to open the door. He used an iron table to protect himself as Michael's men fired their guns at him and he managed to escape.*
52. "Don't trust them."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Antoinette to Rassendyll*
 b) Who does "them" refer to? - *Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet.*
53. "Stand outside and talk. I won't let you in."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Detchard.*
 b) Why didn't the speaker let him / them in? - *Because he didn't trust them. They would kill him.*
 c) What made the speaker go to that place? - *The letter he received from Antoinette.*
54. "Our names are not important. We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Detchard to Rassendyll.*
 b) Why did the speaker make this offer?
 - *To make Rassendyll leave Ruritania and the duke would be the king.*
 c) Did the addressee accept this offer? Why? Why not? - *No, because it was a trap to kill him.*
55. "That sounds a generous offer. Give me a minute to think."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Detchard.*
 b) What was this offer? - *A safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.*
 c) Who did the speaker represent? - *He represented Duke Michael.*
56. "Give me a minute to think."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Detchard.*
 b) What will the speaker think about? - *About the offer the addressed person had made.*

- c) What did the speaker do after that? **-He picked up the iron table and held it by the in front ofhim. He used it to protect himself from their shots. He also used it to knock them to the ground.**
57. "Gentlemen, I'd like to accept your kind offer, perhaps you can open the door for me."
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the three foreigners of the six famous.**
- b) Did the speaker really accept the offer? **- No, he didn't.**
- c) Who did he call "Gentlemen"? **- Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet**
58. "Why don't you open the door yourself?"
- a) Who said this? To whom? **- Detchard to Rassendyll.**
- b) Where were it said? **- In the summer house.**
- c) How was it a funny situation? **- As Rassendyll used an iron table to fight three dangerous men.**
59. "Very well, but it opens outwards. You will need to step back or the door will hit you."
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Detchard**
- b) Why didn't Rassendyll open the door? **- To make them open it so that he could attack them.**
- c) How did he escape? **- He attacked them with the iron table and fired at them.**
60. "It's me, let's go!"
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Sapt.**
- b) What was the addressed person doing at that time?
- He was firing his gun and trying to get into the gate.
61. "I have a fine story to tell you about a table!"
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Sapt**
- b) What was the fine story about the table?
- Rassendyll used the table to protect himself from the men's bullets and escape.
62. "Some interesting things have been happening this morning."
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to Rassendyll.**
- b) What were the interesting things which had been happening that morning?
- The police report said that the Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda. An hour later, he was followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm.
63. "Some people say that if they do not marry soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau."
- a) Where were these words written? **- They were written in the report of the Police Chief.**
- b) Who does the word "they" refer to? **- It refers to the King (Rassendyll) and Princess Flavia.**
- c) What were Michael's ambitions? **- He wanted to get rid of the King and marry Princess Flavia.**
64. "Some people say that if they do not marry soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau".
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Colonel Sapt to Rassendyll.**
- b) Who does "they" refer to? **- Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.**
- c) Why are the people of Ruritania unhappy? **- Because the King had yet to marry the Princess.**
65. "I don't know anything about a ball."
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Sapt.**
- b) Who arranged for this ball? **- Fritz.**
- c) Why did he / she arrange for this ball?
- To make Rassendyll ask the princess to marry him that night.
66. "You must ask the Princess to marry you tonight."
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to Rassendyll.**
- b) Why did the addressee have to ask the Princess to marry him? **- To make people happy.**
- c) What was the listener's opinion? **- He was against that as he was not the not the real king.**
67. "I can't do that. It wouldn't be fair to the Princess."
- a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Sapt**
- b) What wouldn't be fair? **- To ask to marry the Princess as he wasn't the real king.**
68. "You've been the King for a few weeks now. Everyone says you have done a very good job. I'm very pleased for you."
- a) Who said this to whom? **- Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.**
- b) What good job had the addressed person done?

- He managed to change the poor people's opinion about the King. He showed the poor people that he trusted them. He also showed them that he cared about them.

c) What was the real identity of the addressed person?

- He was not the real King. He was Rudolf Rassendyll.

69. "You know, someone once said to me, 'a person who has a position in society has responsibilities.' Recently I have realised how true this is."

a) Who said this to whom? **- Rassendyll to Princess Flavia.**

b) What were the responsibilities of the speaker's position? **- As a King, he had to care about his people. He needed to show them that he had trusted them. He had to do his duties.**

c) Who does the word 'person' in the sentence refer to? **- Rose.**

70. "Haven't you always thought that?"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Princess Flavia to Rassendyll (the king)**

b) What hadn't the addressee always thought?

- A person who has a position in society has responsibilities.

71. "I didn't think I needed to worry about society. It was someone else's job."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the Princess.**

b) How did the addressee feel on hearing that? **- She felt very surprised.**

c) How did the speaker feel after saying that?

- He felt he had made a mistake and wanted to tell the princess that he was not the real king.

72. "But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"

a) Who said this to whom? **- Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.**

b) When did the speaker say this?

- When he said that he hadn't realised his responsibilities as a King when he was young and thought that was someone else's job, so he didn't need to worry about society.

c) Did the speaker always realise that he would become King? Why? Why not?

- No, he didn't as he was just pretending to be the King of Ruritania.

73. "There's something you should know. I'm not really---"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the Princess**

b) What was he going to tell her? **- The truth that he wasn't the real king.**

c) Why couldn't he tell her the truth? **- Because Sapt stopped him from telling her the truth.**

74. "Do you realise that everyone really thinks I'm the King, even the Princess. I can even arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed."

a) Who said this to whom? **- Rassendyll to Colonel Sapt.**

b) Who was the real King and where was he?

- Rudolf Elphberg was the real King. He was held prisoner at the Castle of Zenda.

c) Do you think the speaker would really plan to kill the Duke and the real King? Why? Why not?

- No, I don't think so as Rudolf Rassendyll was a good man who was trying to help the King. He was a man of principles رجل مبادئ who would not betray يخون the people who trusted him.

75. "This is all true, so will you do such a thing?"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to Rassendyll**

b) What did he mean by "thing"? **- To kill both the Duke and the real king and stay as a king.**

76. "Of course not. I shouldn't be here, pretending to be anything."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) What wouldn't the speaker do? **- He wouldn't kill both the Duke and the real king.**

77. "It isn't fair for the people of Ruritania, and it isn't fair for the Princess, either. We can't wait any longer. We must go to Zenda...."

a) Who said this to whom? **- Rassendyll to Sapt.**

b) What did the speaker mean that it was not fair for the people of Ruritania and the Princess?

- He meant that it was not fair that he pretended to be the King.

c) Why did the speaker want to go to Zenda? **- to rescue the King.**

78. "You are a good man."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to Rassendyll**

b) Why did speaker say that? **- As Rassendyll to rescue the real king.**

79. "I don't know who this one's from,"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.*
- b) What was that one? - *The letter from Antoinette de Mauban.*

80. "I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke. Do not accept any invitation from him and do not go anywhere without many guards."

- a) Who said this to whom? - *Antoinette in her letter to Princess Flavia.*
- b) Where was the addressed person supposed to go? - *To the Castle of Zenda.*
- c) What did Rudolf Rassendyll advise the addressed person to do?
- *He advised her to say that she was ill and that she couldn't go to Zenda.*

81. "Why does it say the leader and not the king?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Flavia to Rassendyll.*
- b) What does "it " refer to? - *The letter sent by Antoinette.*
- c) Did the listener answer that question? - *No, he couldn't answer it.*

82. "You must do as the letter says. I'll order guards to watch you."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to the Princess.*
- b) What did the letter ask the listener?
- *It asked her not to accept any invitation from the duke and not to go anywhere without many guards. It also asked her to show this letter, if she could, to the leader of Ruritania.*

83. "A friend of mine. Today you must say you are ill so you can't go to Zenda."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to the Princess*
- b) Who was that friend? - *Antoinette de Mauban*
- c) Why would she pretend to be ill? - *In order not to accept to Michael's invitation.*

84. "So you don't mind making Michael angry?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.*
- b) What did the speaker mean by this?
- *She wanted to know if he would make Michael angry to protect her.*

85. "I don't mind anything if you are safe."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to the Princess*
- b) What did that sentence mean? - *It meant that Rassendyll loved the Princess very much.*

86. "I'm leaving Strelsau for a few days..... Every evening I'll send you a message."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Marshall Strakencz*
- b) Why would he send a message? - *To make the Marshal know that he was still safe.*

87. "You must tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler will be?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Marshall Strakencz.*
- b) Who would their new ruler be? - *Princess Flavia.*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- Rudolf Rassendyll asked Colonel Sapt to protect Princess Flavia from Michael's men.
- 2- In her letter, Rose Rassendyll warned Flavia against accepting Michael's invitation to go to Zenda.
- 3- If Rudolf Rassendyll and the King are killed, Marshal Strakencz must tell the people of Ruritania that their new ruler will be Fritz.
- 4- Rudolf Rassendyll wanted to go to the Castle of Zenda as soon as possible in order to spend the weekend there.
- 5- Flavia pretended that she was ill so that she could go to the Castle of Zenda.
- 6- Princess Flavia would be proclaimed Queen of Ruritania only if the King and Rudolf Rassendyll went abroad.
- 7- If Marshal Strakencz didn't get a phone call from Rudolf Rassendyll for 3 days, he would have the authority to be the head of Strelsau.
- 8- In her letter to Flavia, Antoinette de Mauban referred to Rudolf Rassendyll as the King of Ruritania because she knew he was not the real King.
- 9- Rudolf Rassendyll wanted to tell Fritz that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as he believed it to be.
- 10- Rudolf Elphberg thought it wouldn't be fair for the people of Ruritania if he continued to pretend to be the King.
- 11- Sapt had stopped Rudolf Rassendyll from telling Princess Flavia that he was not ill.

- 12- Marshal Strakencz looked very surprised when Rudolf Rassendyll said that when he was young, he didn't worry about the responsibilities of his position.
- 13- Fritz von Tarlenheim was about to tell Flavia the truth about himself when Colonel Sapt appeared and stopped him.
- 14- Rudolf Rassendyll looked up and jumped with fright while he was talking with the Princess because the face of a wolf suddenly appeared at the French window.
- 15- Rudolf Rassendyll was trying as much as he could to keep his real identity known so that nobody would know that he was not the real King.
- 16- The ball that was held for the Princess was prepared by Robert Rassendyll.
- 17- Many people believed that Rudolf Rassendyll had done a very good job as a grocer.
- 18- Detchard had a bandage around his arm because he fell off his horse.
- 19- Rudolf Rassendyll believed that Princess Flavia had the right to know what had happened to her future father.
- 20- Some people said that if the King didn't marry Flavia soon, it would be better if the Princess married Max Holf.
- 21- Rudolf Rassendyll could not tell anyone who he really was or they would think he was wise.
- 22- At the summer house, Rudolf Rassendyll used a silver chair to protect himself from the bullets of Michael's men.
- 23- While Rudolf Rassendyll was escaping from the summer house, he shot his gun behind him and injured Colonel Sapt.
- 24- Rudolf Rassendyll was sad to say goodbye to Michael and his soldiers at Flavia's house.
- 25- Everybody went into the Castle of Zenda without the permission of Rupert and Michael.
- 26- Antoinette's letter to Rudolf Rassendyll told him to come to the hunting lodge with a friend.
- 27- Flavia got an invitation from Fritz to visit him in Zenda but she refused.
- 28- At the ball held for Flavia, Rudolf Rassendyll told the Princess that he was not the real King.
- 29- Detchard was wounded in the leg by Rassendyll's bullet.
- 30- At the summer house, Detchard offered Rudolf Rassendyll a gold watch to leave Ruritania.
- 31- Sapt had Rudolf Rassendyll followed everywhere in order to arrest him.
- 32- Sapt believed it would be suicidal if Rudolf Rassendyll went to Paris to save the King.
- 33- One reason why nobody noticed that Rudolf Rassendyll was not the real King was that he was very good at pretending that he had remembered rules and people he had met.
- 34- Michael arranged to kill Rudolf Rassendyll and to take his body to the Castle of Zenda.
- 35- If Rudolf Rassendyll was killed, Michael would arrest Rose and Flavia for murdering him.
- 36- Antoinette de Mauban said she wanted to help Rudolf Rassendyll as she didn't like to see people being crowned.
- 37- Antoinette de Mauban came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Robert Rassendyll.
- 38- The Castle of Zenda was heavily guarded as the King was playing chess there.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer these questions.

1. Rassendyll has never liked responsibilities. Now he has many. What responsibilities does he have?
- He has to act like the King. He has to run the country. He has to try to rescue the real King from Michael.
2. Why does Rassendyll become good at pretending he has forgotten rules or people he has met? How does that prevent people from noticing that he is not the real King? What else do you think helps him not to be discovered?
- When he makes a mistake in pretending to be the King, he has to cover it up by pretending that he has forgotten something or someone. In this way, people don't notice that he's not the real King. Other things that might help him are these: people don't expect that there is a pretend King, so they don't look for one; they see what they expect to see. He looks nearly identical to the King, so this helps. Also Sapt stays close to him to tell him what to say or do. (Students might offer other suggestions.)
3. Sapt brings news of the real King. What is it? **- The King is at the Castle of Zenda.**
4. Why does Rassendyll want to go to Zenda? What does Sapt mean when he says "You 'll probably stay there forever if you do"?
- He wants to go to rescue the real King. Sapt means that Rassendyll will either be imprisoned in Zenda or killed there if he goes.

5. Why does Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere? What does he mean by "If you disappear, the game's over"?

- He has him followed to protect him from Michael's men. If they can kill or kidnap Rassendyll, they will kill the real King and make Michael the King. Rassendyll's game of pretending to be King would be over.

6. Who writes a letter to Rassendyll and what does it say? Who does he suspect really wrote it?

- Antoinette de Mauban writes a letter. It tells him to come to a certain place in a summer house in a garden late at night. He suspects that Michael wrote the letter (or at least dictated it to her).

7. When Rassendyll talks to Detchard at the summer house, what does Detchard offer him? Why doesn't Rassendyll accept it?

- Detchard offers to give Rassendyll 50,000 English pounds and a safe journey to the border. Rassendyll doesn't accept this because he knows that they will kill the real King, and he doesn't trust them. They will promise him one thing but kill him instead.

8. How does Rassendyll come out of the summer house alive?

- He holds the iron table in front of him to protect him (like a shield) and he rushes out of the door and knocks the three men down. He runs quickly away.

9. Why have they prepared a ball for the Princess?

- They want to make the people happy and make them think that the King wants to marry the Princess. They want Rassendyll to ask the Princess to marry him. Some people think that if the King doesn't marry her soon, she should marry Duke Michael.

10. Rassendyll tells the Princess that when he was younger, he thought he didn't need to worry about society. Why does he say this? How does the Princess react? Why is it a mistake for him to say this?

- He says it because he forgets to act like the King. He is thinking that he is himself, Rassendyll. The Princess is surprised because the King must have always known that he was going to become the King one day. This is a mistake by Rassendyll because he almost uncovers the truth about who he is.

11. The day after the ball, the Princess receives two letters. What are they and who are they from?

- One is an invitation from Michael for her to visit him in Zenda. The other is a warning not to accept any invitations from Michael and not to go anywhere without many guards. It is from Antoinette de Mauban (although the Princess doesn't know this).

12. What does Rassendyll do when he hears of these letters? Who does he go to?

- He orders a guard for the Princess. He goes to Marshal Strakencz and gives him some orders.

13. What does Rassendyll tell Marshal Strakencz to do?

- He tells him to guard the Princess and not allow Michael or his men to come near her. He also tells the Marshal that he is leaving Strelsau for a few days and he will send a message to him every evening. If he doesn't get a message for three days, he has the authority to say that he is now the head of Strelsau. He must then ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he doesn't see the King in twenty-four hours, he must say that the King's dead. Then he must tell the people of Ruritania that their new ruler will be Princess Flavia.

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. Rassendyll is sad to say goodbye to Duke Michael and his men. (F)

- He was not sorry to say goodbye to them.

2. No one goes into the castle without Rupert or Michael's permission. (T)

3. The letter tells the King to come to the summer house with a friend. (F)

- It tells him to come alone.

4. Rassendyll tells Sapt he can come but he must wait outside the summer house. (F)

- He must wait outside the gate to the garden.

5. Michael plans to kill Rassendyll, arrest Sapt and Fritz, and kill the real King. (T)

6. Rassendyll runs out the door holding a table to protect himself. (T)

7. Detchard is wounded in the leg by Rassendyll's bullet. (F)

- He is wounded in the arm.

8. At the ball, Rassendyll tells the Princess that he is not the real King. (F)

- He is about to tell her, but Sapt interrupts him to stop him.

9. Duke Michael invites the Princess to visit him in Zenda and she accepts. (F)

- He invites her, but the other letter and Rassendyll tell her not to accept the invitation.

10. Strakencz is ordered to immediately become the head of Strelsau. (F)

- If he doesn't receive a message from the King for three days, he must say he is the head of Strelsau.

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."

1. Who says this to whom? - **Sapt says this to Rassendyll.**

2. Why does the speaker say this? - **Because Rassendyll complained that there are always men following him. (The men were ordered by Sapt to do so.)**

3. What game would be over if the person disappeared? Explain.

- The game of who is King. Michael would also kill the real King and then make himself King.

"I also have a game to play. I'll tell the Duke's men that you never came. If the Duke doesn't find out what I've done, we may meet again."

1. Who says this to whom? - **Antoinette de Mauban says this to Rassendyll.**

2. Where are they? - **They are in a summer house in a garden in Strelsau.**

3. What has the speaker done that the Duke shouldn't find out?

- She has warned Rassendyll that they are trying to kill him, and has told him how to escape.

"But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"

1. Who says this to whom? - **Princess Flavia says this to "King" Rassendyll.**

2. Where are they? - **They are at the ball in the palace.**

3. This was said in reaction to the other person's words. What did the other person say before this? - **He said that when he was younger he didn't think he had any responsibilities to society.**

"Every evening, I'll send you a message. If you don't get a message for three days, you have the authority to say that you are now the head of Strelsau."

1. Who says this to whom? - **"King" Rassendyll says this to Marshal Strakencz.**

2. When is this said? - **This is said the day after the ball, before Rassendyll goes to Zenda. / After the Duke invites the Princess to Zenda and Antoinette warns her to stay away.**

3. What other orders does the speaker give? - **The Marshal must guard the Princess and not let Michael or his men near her. If the Marshal becomes the head of Strelsau, he must then go to the Duke and demand to see the King. If he doesn't see the King in twenty-four hours, he must tell the people that the King is dead and make Princess Flavia the new ruler of Ruritania.**

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

1) Why did Princess Flavia advise King Rassendyll to be careful at the end of his visit to her?

2) What had Rudolf Rassendyll always wanted in life?

3) What responsibilities did Rudolf Rassendyll have as a King?

4) Why did nobody notice that Rassendyll was not the real King?

5) Why did Rudolf Rassendyll sometimes make big mistakes as a King?

6) How would Rassendyll's growing popularity with the people of Ruritania help him?

7) When did Rudolf Rassendyll realise that Rose Rassendyll was right when she said that a 'position in society brings with it responsibility'?

8) How did Sapt find out that the letter Rudolf Rassendyll received was from a woman?

9) What important news did Sapt tell Rudolf Rassendyll about the King? How did he know such news?

10) Why was the drawbridge at the Castle nearly always kept up?

11) Who were the only two people who can give permission to anyone to go into the building?

12) What did Sapt do to protect Rudolf Rassendyll from Michael and his men?

13) According to Sapt, what would happen if Rudolf Rassendyll was killed?

14) What did Antoinette de Mauban ask Rudolf Rassendyll to do in her letter?

15) Why didn't Colonel Sapt want Rudolf Rassendyll to go to the summer house?

16) Why did Rudolf Rassendyll insist on going to the summer house to meet Antoinette de Mauban?

17) When did Rudolf Rassendyll object to Sapt's way of always telling him what to do and what not to do?

- 18) How could Rudolf Rassendyll reach the summer house where Antoinette de Mauban was staying?
- 19) What was Duke Michael's plan to trap and kill Rudolf Rassendyll?
- 20) If Michael's plan to kill Rassendyll at the summer house succeeded, what would he do after that?
- 21) According to Antoinette de Mauban, why did she want to help Rassendyll?
- 22) If Rudolf Rassendyll was killed, who would be accused of murdering him?
- 23) What was Duke Michael's men's generous offer to Rudolf Rassendyll in order to leave Ruritania?
- 24) Why didn't Rudolf Rassendyll accept the offer made by Michael's men?
- 25) How did Rudolf Rassendyll manage to escape from the summer house?
- 26) What did the report of the police chief say?
- 27) Why did Detchard have a bandage around his arm?
- 28) Why did Rudolf Rassendyll think it wouldn't be fair for Princess Flavia if he asked her to marry him?
- 29) Why did everyone believe that Rudolf Rassendyll had done a very good job as a King?
- 30) What mistake did Rudolf Rassendyll make while he was talking with Princess Flavia after the ball?
- 31) Why did Rudolf Rassendyll want to tell Princess Flavia the truth about himself?
- 32) What happened when Rudolf Rassendyll was about to tell Flavia the truth about himself?
- 33) Why did Rudolf Rassendyll realise that his game (pretending to be the King) had gone too far to go back?
- 34) Why did Rudolf Rassendyll think that pretending to be the King was unfair?
- 35) Why did Rassendyll decide to go to Zenda?
- 36) Princess Flavia received a letter from Duke Michael. What did the Duke ask her to do?
- 37) What did Antoinette de Mauban warn Flavia not to do in her letter to her?
- 38) Who did Rudolf Rassendyll think would be the best guard for Princess Flavia? Why?
- 39) What did Rudolf Rassendyll ask Marshal Strakencz to do to protect Princess Flavia?
- 40) What would Marshal Strakencz do if he didn't get a message for three days from Rudolf Rassendyll?

Quotations

1. "I can't say .But think what your life means to the people of Ruritania."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) What can't the speaker say?
2. "The drawbridge is nearly kept up. That's not normal."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) Where was "The drawbridge"?
 - c) What did keeping up the drawbridge mean?
3. "Tell my..... why is it that wherever I go in the capital, I'm followed by six people."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) Who ordered these six people to follow the speaker?
 - c) Why were they ordered to follow him?
4. "It'd be useful for Michael if you disappear. And if you disappear, the game is over."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) Why did Rassendyll's life mean to Sapt?
 - c) Why was his disappearance useful for Michael?
5. "If you don't believe me, ask Colonel Sapt what woman has been a guest of the Duke."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) What was Sap's reaction on hearing this?
6. "Perhaps she would be useful if she had information about Michael."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) Was she really useful? How do you know?
7. "Every day we leave the King imprisoned there's more danger. We must move quickly."
 - a- Who said this to whom?
 - b- Where and why was the King imprisoned?
 - c- What would happen to the King if they didn't move quickly?
8. "I believe this woman and I will go. Either I go to the house, or I go back to England."
 - a) Who said that? To whom?
 - b) Where was that house?
9. "The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town to be found."
 - a) Who said that ?To whom?
 - b) Why would the body be in the old town?
 - c) What would Michel do with the real king?
10. "Oh, yes, I understand. It's a clever plan. But why are you helping me?"

- a) Who said that ? To whom? b) What was the clever plan?
c) Why was Antoinette helping Rassendyll?

11. "You are never safe in this city. If you are alone, then you will die."

- a) Who said that ? To whom?
b) Which city did the speaker talk about? c) Who would kill him?

12. "Thank you .You have helped the king tonight."

- a) Who said that ? To whom? b) Who did she help the king ?

13. -"We want to make you an offer. Will you let us in?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) What was the offer?

14. "Everyone says you have done a very good job. I'm pleased for you."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) What was the good job?

15. "A person, who has a position in society, has responsibilities. I've realised it is true."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) Who told Rassendyll those wise words?

16. "But you always knew that you would become king. How could you think that?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) What made the speaker say so?

17. "I could even arrange for the Duke and the real king to be killed."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) Did the speaker intend to do that? c) Why did he say that?

18. "We must go to Zenda and rescue the king."

- a) Who said this? To whom? b) Why did they have to go to Zenda as soon as possible?
c) Where was the king locked?

19. "I don't want you to fall into the power of the Duke. Show this letter to the leader."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) Why did she warn her of the Duke?
c) Why does she say the leader and not the king?

20. You'll probably stay forever if you do."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) What was the hint?

21. "I don't need such help. I can look after myself."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) Which help did the speaker refuse?

22. "I don't believe that woman and you are mad to go."

- a) Who said that? To whom? b) Who was that woman?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1-Fritz brought Rassendyll news about the place of the king.
- 2-The real king was sent a letter from Madame de Mauban
- 3-Sapt thought that Antoinette wrote the letter by herself
- 4- Sapt trusted Antoinette de Mauban
- 5- Rassendyll insisted on not going to meet Antoinette
- 6 -Antoinette wanted Rassendyll to meet her at the palace
- 7- Rassendyll asked Sapt not to go with him to meet Antoinette .
- 8- If the Duke killed Rassendyll , he would throw the body in the moat .
- 9- The king would be arrested for killing Rassendyll.
- 10- Detchard offered Rassendyll 200 thousand English pounds to leave Ruritania
- 11- Rassendyll attacked the men with a wooden table.
- 12- Rassendyll managed to fire his gun at De Gautet
- 13- Fritz was waiting for Rassendyll at the gate of the summer house
- 14- Antoinette helped Rassendyll as she didn't like to see animals being killed
- 15- Rassendyll climbed the stairs which Antoinette told him about
- 16- Rassendyll was asked to divorce the Princess.
- 17- Rassendyll wanted to tell Antoinette the truth
- 18- Fritz prevented Rassendyll from telling the truth to the Princess.
- 19- Rassendyll wanted to rescue the king from the palace.
- 20- Sapt said that Rassendyll was a bad man
- 21- Rassendyll wanted to see Antoinette again to warn her
- 22- The Princess received a letter from the king
- 23- Antoinette warned the Princess against Rassendyll
- 24- Rassendyll asked the Princess to meet the Duke
- 25- Rassendyll asked the Marshall to kill the Princess

Chapter 6

address	يخاطب	generous	كريم	perfect	تام
area	منطقة	Get off	ينزل	pipe	نفق / انبوب
arrival	وصول	get ready	يستعد	Prisoner	سجين
attack	يهاجم	Go hunting	يذهل للصيد	prove	يبرهن
belong	ينتمي	go on	يحدث	pulse	نبض
betray	يخون / يخدع	hill	تل	recognise	يتعرف على
betrayal	خيانة	hunt	يصاد	relative	اقارب
borders	حدود (دولة)	illness	مرض	royal	ملكي
bow	ينحني	in chains	متسلسل	rude	وقح
brave	شجاع	in public	في العلن	safety	امان
bring	يحضر	In trouble	في مازق	secrets	اسرار
bullet	رصاصة	injury	إصابة	set free	يحرر
by the way	علي فكرة	legally	شرعيا	speech	خطاب
candles	شموع	Look forward to	يتطلع الى	spy	جاسوس
chains	سلاسل	Loyal	مخلص	stab	يطعن
criminal	مجرم	mansion	القصر	trick	خدعة
Cut into	يحفر	messenger	رسول	trust	يثق
different	مختلف	midday	الظهر	uncover	يكشف
drawbridge	جسر متحرك	miracle	معجزة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
drop	يسقط	nearly	تقريباً	upstairs	الدور العلوى
duties	واجبات	openly	علني	Weigh	وزن
encouragement	تشجيع	opposite	مواجه / مقابل	whatever	مهما
forgive	يسامح	otherwise	والا	wicked	شرير
formal	رسمي	party	مجموعة	woods	غابات

Questions & Answers

1. Who did Rassendyll ask the Marshall to protect the Princess From? - *From the Duke.*
2. Why did the Duke want to marry the Princess?
- *Because his mother wasn't royal and he could legally become king if he married the Princess.*
3. What did the Marshall notice when Rassendyll wrote his order?
- *The writing was a little different from the usual writing of the king.*
4. How did Rassendyll justify the difference in handwriting?
- *He said it was because of the injury in his finger.*
5. Where did Rassendyll tell the princess he was going?
- *He told her that he was going to hunt a big animal. (Michael)*
6. What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he didn't come back? - *To be Queen of Ruritania*
7. Where was the Tarlenheim castle?
- *On top of a hill which had a leafy wood. It was about eight kilometres from Zenda.*
8. Who did the Tarlenheim house belong to? - *It belonged to a relative of Fritz.*
9. Who did Rassendyll take with him to the Tarlenheim house?
- *He took Sapt, Fritz and a large party of servants besides ten brave and strong gentlemen who he trusted.*
10. What did Rassendyll tell the ten men? - *Rassendyll told them that Michael had tried to kill him and that a good friend of the king was held prisoner in the castle .It was their job to set the prisoner free.*
11. Show that the men whom the pretend king took with him were brave and loyal.
- *When Rassendyll told them about the job, they didn't need to ask any more questions.*
12. Who arrived at the Tarlenheim house to visit Rassendyll?
- *The three Ruritaniens of the famous six (Rupert, Lauengram and Krafstein).*
13. Why couldn't the Duke host the king (Rassendyll) at his mansion?
- *Rupert claimed that the Duke and his servants had a dangerous illness.*
14. What did Rassendyll think of Rupert's talk to him?
- *His talk was formal and polite but Rassendyll didn't believe a word he said.*
15. What was Sapt's opinion of Rupert Hentzau?

- *Sapt said that Rupert was the worst criminal in Ruritania.*
16. Why did Rassendyll feel safe when he set off for Zenda with Fritz? - *His face was covered and there were many people on the roads. They didn't go near the castle but they went to the inn.*
17. Why did Rassendyll uncover his face in front of the owner's daughter?
- *To let her see him and she thought that he was the king as he planned.*
18. How was the owner's daughter mistaken about Rassendyll? - *She thought that he was the king.*
19. Why did the owner's daughter apologise to Rassendyll? - *Thinking he was the real king, she apologised for saying anything bad when he stayed with them before*
20. What condition did Rassendyll ask her to achieve to forgive her?
- *He asked her to bring Johann to Tarlenheim and asked her not to tell anyone that she saw the king.*
21. Why did the girl agree happily to bring Johann to the king (Rassendyll)?
- *Because he promised her that he wouldn't hurt Johann if he did as he asked.*
22. Why did it seem dangerous for Rassendyll to ride in that area alone? - *Because Bernenstein (one of Rassendyll's men) saw three men in the trees and one shot him in the arm.*
23. Why weren't they safe in the country house?
- *Because Michael's men knew their place and they wanted to kill Rassendyll.*
24. Why did Rupert ask Rassendyll to stop pretending?
- *Because all of them knew that he was Rassendyll, not the king.*
25. Although Rupert knew Rassendyll's game, Rassendyll was confident. Illustrate.
- *They couldn't tell the truth of Rassendyll as people would know that they had kidnapped the real king.*
26. What was the 2nd offer which Rupert told Rassendyll about?
- *The Duke offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.*
27. Why did Rassendyll refuse the 2nd offer? - *Rassendyll was an honest, faithful and honourable man. He knew that Michael and his men were lying so he didn't trust them.*
28. What would happen if Rassendyll accepted the offer?
- *The real king would be killed and even Rassendyll could be killed and Michael would be king.*
29. Rupert Hentzau was treacherous غدار and trustless. Explain.
- *He asked Rassendyll to shake hands and stabbed him in his shoulder with his knife. He also offered to work for Rassendyll against Michael.*
30. How was Rassendyll lucky when Rupert stabbed him? - *The injury wasn't bad.*
31. Why was Rassendyll *angry* when Rupert stabbed him?
- *Rassendyll was angry to let himself fall to such a trick.*
32. Why was Johann happy to help Rassendyll?
- *Johann knew if Michael's plan was successful, he'd be in trouble as he knew too much.*
33. Johann was a weak man not a wicked one. How did that help Rassendyll?
- *Johann worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him. He seemed happy to tell Rassendyll Michael's secrets so Rassendyll used him as a perfect spy.*
34. What did Johan tell them about the real king's place inside the castle?
- *Johann said that there were two small rooms inside the castle. The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground. One room had no windows so it was always lit by candles. Behind it was a second room with a small window where the king was kept in chains.*
35. How could these rooms be reached? - *They could only be reached by crossing the drawbridge.*
36. Why was the first room always guarded by three of the six men?
- *They had orders if anyone attacked the first room, Detchard would kill the king.*
37. Why was there a pipe from the window of the king's room?
- *When the king was killed, the body would then be put down the pipe which led to the castle's moat.*
38. The pipe had many uses for Michael's men. Discuss.
a) *The king's body would be thrown into the moat through the pipe.*
b) *The three men would escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat.*
39. What was the 2nd plan to get rid of the king if many people attacked the castle?
- *They would kill the king and threw his body into the moat through the pipe. One of the six famous would take the king's place in the room.*
40. Why would one of the six men take the king's place? - *Michael would say he kept him prisoner as he had been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the king was ever there.*

41. How was Sapt being frustrated by Michael's clever plan?
- He said if they attacked the castle quietly and secretly or openly with a great army, the king would still be dead before they could save him. He said Rassendyll would be king forever.
42. Why was Rassendyll's pulse quickened at the thought of remaining king forever?
- Without proving that Michael had killed the real king, Michael would still be there, in his castle, waiting for his opportunity to take Rassendyll's place.
43. Who knew about Michael's plan other than his men? **-The real king and Max Holf.**
44. What did Johann say about his brother Max?
-Johann said that his brother helped to put up the pipe to the prison window.
45. Why wasn't it easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda?
- Because no one was safe .Everyone in the castle was a criminal, except the king.
46. What orders did Rassendyll give Johann after thanking him?
- If anyone asked him if there was a prisoner in the castle, he could say there was. If any one asked who the prisoner was, he wouldn't answer.
47. According to Rassendyll, how could the king come out of Zenda alive?
- If they had a miracle or one of the Duke's men betrayed him.

Quotations

1. "You must promise that you will protect Princess Flavia from the Duke."
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Marshall Strakencz.**
 b) Why did Michael want to marry Flavia? **- To be legally king as his mother wasn't royal.**
2. "Now I'll write down what I've just said. But my finger still hurts."
 a) Who said this? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the Marshal.**
 b) Where was the speaker going? **- To Zenda.**
 c) Why was his finger damaged? **- As it was shot.**
3. "The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it is a real order."
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Marshall Strakencz to Rassendyll (the king)**
 b) Why didn't the Marshall suspect Rassendyll? **- As Rassendyll's finger still hurt.**
4. "I trust you".
 a) Who says this? To whom? **- Rassendyll (the king) to Marshall Strakencz**
 b) What does the speaker order the listener to do? **- He tells him to guard the Princess. He also tells the Marshal that he will send a message to him every evening. If he doesn't get a message for three days, he has the authority to say that he is now the head of Strelsau. He must ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he doesn't see the King in twenty-four hours, he must say that the King's dead. Then he must tell the people of Ruritania that their new ruler will be Princess Flavia.**
 c) What was the occasion? **- Rassendyll was leaving for Zenda to free the real king.**
5. "The Princess will be safe with me."
 a) Who said this? To whom? **- Marshal Strakencz to Rassendyll.**
 b) What was the speaker ordered to do? **- To protect Princess Flavia from the Duke.**
 c) When did that take place? **- Before Rassendyll (the king) goes out to Zenda.**
6. "So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital."
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Flavia to the pretend king (Rassendyll).**
 b) What did the speaker blame the listener for?
- For preferring hunting animals to doing his duties in the capital.
 c) What did these words show us about the speaker? **- She cared about Ruritania.**
7. "The thing I hunt is a very big animal "
 a) Who was the speaker? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Flavia**
 b) Where were they? **- In Flavia's palace.**
 c) Which animal was the speaker talking about? **-Duke Michael.**
8. "This'll be dangerous."
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Flavia to the pretend king (Rassendyll)**
 b) What would be dangerous? **- The fight with Michael.**

9. If I don't come back, you will be queen for me."
- Who said that ? To whom? - **Rassendyll to the Princess.**
 - Where was the speaker going? - **To Zenda to free the real king.**
10. "I will do whatever is right for Ruritania."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Flavia to the pretend king (Rassendyll)**
 - What do you think of Flavia? - **She was patriot and ready to sacrifice for Ruritania.**
11. "Thank you; let's hope it's not necessary."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to the Princess.**
 - What was the speaker talking about?
- **Flavia being the Queen of Ruritania in case Rassendyll (the king) never comes back.**
 - Where were they? - **In Flavia's palace.**
12. "I'm sorry to hear this. I hope my brother feels better soon."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
 - What was wrong with the speaker's brother? - **He pretended that he and many of his servants had a dangerous illness to prevent people from approaching the Castle.**
 - Where were they? - **In Tarlenheim house.**
13. "And what of your friends. I heard that Detchard was injured?"
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
 - What did he mean by "your friends"? - **The rest of the famous six.**
 - What did Rassendyll want to tell Rupert? - **He beat his friends and hurt Detchard.**
14. "You needn't worry, Detchard will be fine."
- Who said these words? To whom? - **Rupert to Rassendyll.**
 - What was wrong with Detchard? - **Rassendyll had shot him in the arm.**
 - Where were they? - **At the Tarlenheim house.**
15. "Good. Perhaps you would like to stay and eat with us."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
 - Where were they? - **In the Tarlenheim house.**
 - What was the occasion?
- **Rupert was visiting them to tell them that the Duke and many of his servants had a dangerous illness.**
16. "You are very kind but unfortunately we have important duties and need to get back."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rupert to Rassendyll.**
 - Who does "we" refer to? - **Rupert, Krafestein and Lauengram.**
 - What do you think he meant by "important duties"? - **Getting rid of Rassendyll and the real king.**
17. "Of course you do, Thank you for coming. I look forward to seeing you all again."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert**
 - What did the Speaker mean by "all"? - **Rupert, Krafestein and Lauengram.**
 - What was the occasion? - **Duke Michael had sent three of the Six to the king after reaching Zenda.**
18. "That Rupert's the worst criminal of them all."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Sapt to Rassendyll.**
 - What does the speaker mean by "all"? - **The Duke's six men.**
 - Who employed Rupert and his fellows? - **Michael.**
19. "I have been here before."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Fritz**
 - What did "here" refer to? - **It referred to the inn (the first place he visited in Zenda).**
20. "Won't they recognise you?"
- Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll**
 - Who would recognise him? - **The owner of the inn and her daughters.**
21. "Of course. Just do as I say and everything will be fine."
- Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Fritz.**
 - Why did they go to that place? - **To employ Johann as a spy in the castle.**
22. "You are the king! I remember you when you stayed with us. I told my mother you weren't an Englishman."
- Who said that? To whom? - **The inn owner's daughter to Rassendyll.**

- b) Where were they? - ***In an inn in Zenda.***
 c) What was the occasion?
 - ***Rassendyll went to the inn to meet Johann to employ him as a spy in the castle.***
23. "I'm sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***The inn owner's daughter to Rassendyll.***
 b) What did the speaker apologise for?
 - ***Her mother said that she liked the duke and preferred him to be the king.***
 c) Did the addressee accept her apology? - ***Yes, in case she promised to help them.***
24. "I will forgive you if you promise to help us. I wanted to see Johann"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the inn owner's daughter.***
 b) What would the speaker forgive him/her for? - ***For the bad things her mother said about the king.***
 c) What did the speaker want the listener to do? - ***To help him to find Johann.***
25. "He never comes here any more. He works at the castle now."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***The inn owner's daughter to Rassendyll.***
 b) About whom was the speaker speaking? - ***Johann.***
 c) Why did the listener want "He"?
 - ***To get information about the duke's plan and to use him as a spy inside the castle.***
26. "But you are still friends and you must ask to see him."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the inn owner's daughter.***
 b) Who were still friends? - ***The inn owner's daughter and Johann.***
27. "Tell him to meet you tomorrow night, then bring him to our house."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the inn owner's daughter.***
 b) What did "him" refer to? - ***Johann.***
 c) What did the speaker mean by "Our house"? - ***The Tarlenheim house.***
28. "You won't hurt him, will you, sir?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***The inn owner's daughter to Rassendyll.***
 b) What did "him" refer to? - ***Johann.***
 c) Why did the speaker say so? - ***As she knew that Johan helped the Duke against the king.***
29. "No. If he does what we ask."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to the inn owner's daughter.***
 b) What did "he" refer to? - ***Johann.***
 c) What did the speaker ask him / her to do?
 - ***To give them information about the castle, the place of the king and Michael's plans.***
30. "So you are safe! It's dangerous to ride in this area unless you are in a large group."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Sapt to Rassendyll.***
 b) Why did the speaker say so?
 - ***As one of their men went out alone in the woods that day. He saw three men in the trees and one shot him.***
31. "We're fine. Why shouldn't we be?"
 a) Who said these words? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Sapt.***
 b) Where were they? - ***At the Tarlenheim house.***
 c) Why did the speaker say so? - ***As Sapt was worried about Rassendyll.***
32. "I have a message for you, Rassendyll."
 a) Who said that? - ***Rupert de Hentzau.***
 2- Who sent the speaker with a message? - ***Duke Michael.***
 3-What was the message? - ***The Duke offered a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.***
33. "If you don't know how to address the king, my brother must find another messenger."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rassendyll to Rupert.***
 b) What made did the speaker say so? - ***As Rupert addressed him as Rassendyll.***
 c) Why did the addressed person go to that place?
 - ***To tell Rassendyll that the Duke offered him a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.***
34. "Why do you continue to pretend?We all know who you are."
 a) Who said that? To whom? - ***Rupert to Rassendyll.***
 b) What did the addressee pretend to be? - ***To be the king of Ruritania.***

- c) What does the speaker mean by "we all"? - **Michael and his men besides Rassendyll and his men.**
35. "But you can't say that in public, can you?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
- b) What couldn't they say in public? Why?
- **Rassendyll was not the real king. Because they would be accused of kidnapping the real king.**
- c) What evil thing did the speaker do before leaving? - **He stabbed Rassendyll.**
36. "The game's not finished yet, and until it is, I will choose my own name."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
- b) What game did the speaker mean? - **Pretending to be the king.**
- c) Why couldn't the addressed person uncover the real personality of the speaker?
- **Because they would be accused of kidnapping the real king.**
37. "The Duke offers you a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rupert to Rassendyll.**
- b) Was that the only offer? - **No, it was the second. Michael offered him a safe journey to the border and 50,000 English pounds in the first time.**
38. "Tell the Duke I refuse his generous offer. How is his prisoner, by the way?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
- b) What was that offer? - **A safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.**
- c) Who was "his prisoner"? - **The real king.**
39. "He is still alive"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rupert to Rassendyll.**
- b) Who was "He"? - **The real king.**
- c) Where was this person? Why?
- **He was imprisoned in the castle of Zenda because Michael wanted to be the king.**
40. "Good, now go from here while you can."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rupert.**
- b) Why did the addressed person go to that place?
- **To offer Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.**
- c) What did the speaker mean by "while you can"? - **He meant before he kills him.**
41. "Let's shake hands."
- a) Who said this? To whom? - **Rupert to Rassendyll.**
- b) Where was the speaker at that time? - **Just outside Tarlenheim house.**
- c) What did the speaker do then? - **He stabbed Rassendyll.**
42. "The doctor says your arm will soon be better."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
- b) What was the problem with the other person's arm? - **Rupert stabbed him.**
43. "The good news is that your plan has worked, for the girl's brought Johann."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
- b) Who was the girl? - **The inn owner's daughter.**
- c) Where did she bring Johann? - **To Tarlenheim house.**
44. "He seems to know that if Michael's plan is successful, he'll be in trouble."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Fritz to Rassendyll.**
- b) Who were they talking about? - **Johann.**
- c) Why would this person in trouble if Michael's plan was successful? - **As he knew many secrets.**
45. "What if many men attacked the castle?"
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Johann.**
- b) What if many men attacked the castle? - **Michael's plan was to kill the king, hide his body under water, then put one of the six as prisoner saying that he was rude to Antoinette do Mauban.**
46. "They have another plan."
- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Johann to Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz.**
- b) Who have another plan? - **Michael and his men.**
- c) What was the other plan? - **It was to kill the king, hide his body under water, then put one of the six as prisoner saying that he was rude to Antoinette do Mauban.**

47. "It's a very clever plan. It means that if we attack the castle, the king will still be dead."
- Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll, Fritz and Johann.*
 - What plan did he refer to? - *Michael's plan to kill the king, hide his body under water, then put one of the six as prisoner saying that he was rude to Antoinette de Mauban*
 - What was the occasion? - *Johann was telling Sapt and Rassendyll about Michael's evil plans.*
48. "I think that this time next year, you will be king."
- Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 - What did that mean? - *It meant that they couldn't rescue the real king*
49. "Does the king know about Michael's plan?"
- Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann*
 - Did the king know about Michael's plan? - *Yes he did*
 - What was Michael's plan? - *To kill the king and throw his body in the moat*
50. "Yes, and so does my brother, Max. It isn't easy to sleep in the castle as no one feels safe. Everyone in it is a criminal except the king."
- Who said that? To whom? - *Johann to Rassendyll.*
 - What did the speaker mean by "yes"? - *He meant that the king knew about Michael's plan.*
51. "We can help you if you keep your promises otherwise you will never be safe again."
- Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann.*
 - What promises would the listener keep? - *To help them.*
52. "So what are we going to do now?"
- Who said that? To whom? - *Sapt to Rassendyll*
 - Why did Sapt ask that question? - *Because Michael's plan frustrated him.*
53. "There are two ways in which the king can come out of Zenda alive,"
- Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Sapt*
 - What were the two ways? - *If they had a miracle or if the duke was betrayed by one of his men.*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- The Tarlenheim House belonged to Sapt's relative.
- The Tarlenheim House was far from the Castle of Zenda.
- Sapt I Fritz Rudolf and ten brave men stayed in a house near Strelsau •
- The ten men were told a relative of the King's was a prisoner in the
- Rupert Hentzau said that the King was ill at the moment .
- The Duke was ordered to protect the Princess .
- The King's mother was not royal.
- To become a king the Duke had to marry the Countess.
- The king asked Flavia to be Princess if he didn't come back. .
- Antoinette promised to do what was right for Ruritania •
- The king had six brave Men with him during his trip to Zenda.
- The Marshal sent three of the Six to welcome his brother.
- Michael offered Johann a million gold pieces.
- Rupert aimed his sword at Rassendyll to kill him •
- Rupert came again to speak to Sapt alone.
- The three dangerous men shot Bersonin thinking he was Michael.
- The wound in Rassendyll's arm was not very dangerous.
- Michael spoke to Rassendyll privately.
- The two rooms below the underground were cut into stone.
- The King was locked in the first room.
- If someone tried to get into the first room, Michael would be killed.
- The King's body would appear if it was tied to chains.
- The window would be used by the murderers to escape from the Castle.
- If the army was brought in the Castle, Michael would kill the Duke.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer these questions.

1. Rassendyll's writing is different from the King's. What reason does Rassendyll give? Why might this difference be a problem for Marshal Strakencz?
- Rassendyll says it is because of his injured finger. It might be a problem for Strakencz because people might think the order from the King is not a real one.
2. What reason does Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau? What does he ask her to do if he doesn't come back? **- He tells her he is going to hunt a big animal - Michael. He tells her she must become Queen if he doesn't return.**
3. Where do Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip? Where is it and who does it belong to? **- They stay in a country house called Tarlenheim. It belongs to a relative of Fritz. It is on a hill on the opposite side of the town of Zenda from the castle.**
4. What reason does Duke Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle? **- He says that he and some servants have a serious sickness. (It is not true.)**
5. Why do Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda? Who do they talk to there and what do they say? **- They go to meet Johann (or someone who can contact him). They talk to the innkeeper's daughter and ask her to have Johann meet them the next night.**
6. What happens to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll are out?
- He is shot in the arm while he is out in the woods.
7. What message does Rupert Hentzau bring the next day? How does Rassendyll reply? What happens when Rupert is leaving?
- The Duke offers Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces. Rassendyll refuses. As Rupert is leaving, he stabs Rassendyll in the shoulder with a knife.
8. What do they learn from Johann?
- They learn where the King is being kept in the castle and the Duke's plans.
9. Describe the room and the pipe where the real King is being kept.
- There is an outer room with no windows. It is always guarded by three of the Six Men. The King is kept in chains in the next room. Its window has a large pipe that leads to the castle moat.
10. What is the plan if they are attacked? How will they kill the King and what will they do with the body?
- They will kill the King and then put him into the pipe. The chains will keep the body under the water of the moat. The guards can then go out the same pipe and swim across the moat to escape.
11. Why do they send Johann back to the castle? **- The Duke would look for him if he were missing. They also hope they can trust him and get more information from him.**

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. Duke Michael cannot legally become King unless he marries Princess Flavia. (T)
2. Rassendyll's writing is different from the real King's writing. (T)
3. Fritz owns the country house called Tarlenheim. (F) **- Fritz's relative owns it.**
4. The ten brave and strong gentlemen know that Rassendyll is not the real King. (F)
- They think he is. They know that Michael tried to kill the King (Rassendyll) and that a friend of the King is a prisoner in the castle.
5. Duke Michael visits Rassendyll at Tarlenheim. (F)
- He sends three of the Six Men to visit and apologize.
6. The innkeeper's daughter says that she thought Rassendyll was the King when he stayed with them. (T)
7. Johann works for the Duke because he loves him. (F)
- He works for him because he is afraid of him.
8. If the Duke kills the King, he will put the body into the moat with chains on it. (T)
9. The Castle of Zenda is a happy place. (F)
- No one feels safe there because they're all criminals (except the King).
10. Rassendyll thinks it will be easy to rescue the King. (F)
- It will be difficult. It will need a miracle or betrayal by one of the Duke's men.

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

'The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King.'

1. Who says this to Rassendyll (the King)? - **Marshal Strakencz says this.**
2. What does he think is the reason that the handwriting is different? What is the real reason?
- **He thinks it is different because the King has injured his hand. The real reason is that Rassendyll is not the real King.**

3. Why is it important that the handwriting be the same?

- **So that people will know that it is a real order from the King.**

"So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?"

1. Who says this to Rassendyll? - **Princess Flavia.**

2. When does the person say this?

- **The day after the ball, when Rassendyll is saying goodbye to go to Zenda to hunt Michael.**

3. What "animal" is Rassendyll going to hunt? - **Duke Michael.**

"If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger."

1. Who does Rassendyll say this to? - **Rassendyll says this to Rupert Hentzau.**

2. Where are they? - **They are at Tarlenheim.**

3. Why does he say this? - **He says this because Hentzau has addressed him as "Rassendyll".**

"Rassendyll, I think that this time next year, you'll still be King."

1. Who says this? - **Colonel Sapt.**

2. What has he just heard? - **He has just heard the Duke's plan for killing the King and hiding the body.**

3. Why does he think Rassendyll will still be King after a year? - **Because the Duke's plan is very clever and he will kill the King whether he is attacked by a small group or a large one.**

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

- 1-How far did Rassendyll trust the Marshal?
- 2-What was Michael's only way to become a king?
- 3-Why was marrying Flavia the only way for Michael to become a king?
- 4-What promise did the Marshal make to Rassendyll?
- 5-Why was it difficult to write for Rassendyll to write an order?
- 6-Why would the king's writing be a little different from usual?
- 7-Why did Rassendyll have to see Flavia before leaving Strelsau?
- 8-What did the Princess accuse Rassendyll of when he said he'd go hunting?
- 9-According to Rassendyll, which animal would he hunt?
- 10-What was the Princess's reaction on hearing about hunting Michael?
- 11-What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do in case of not coming back?
- 12-Where would Rassendyll stay in Zenda?
- 13-To whom did the Tarlenheim house belong?
- 14-Who accompanied Rassendyll during his trip to Zenda?
- 15-How did they justify taking 10 men with the king to Zenda?
- 16-What job would the ten men do?
- 17-How long did it take Michael to know about their arrival?
- 18- According to Rupert Hentzau , why did Michael prefer the king's staying away?
- 19- What did Rassendyll ask Rupert about?
- 20-What was Sapt's opinion of Rupert?
- 21-How far was Flavia patriotic **وطنية**?
- 22-What promise did the king make concerning **فيما يتعلق** Johann?
- 23-What advice did Sapt give to Rassendyll?
- 24-What made Sapt say the area became so dangerous?
- 25-Why was Rassendyll angry with Rupert in his second visit?
- 26-What was Rassendyll's reply when Rupert said he was not the real King?
- 27-What did Rassendyll notice **لاحظ** about Johann's character?
- 28-What made Johann work for Michael?
- 29-How far did Johann hate Michael?
- 30-How many rooms were there underground in the castle?
- 31-Where was the king locked in chains **مقيدة بالسلاسل**?

- 32-What would happen if someone got into the first room?
 33-Why was it impossible to find the king's body if he was killed?
 34-What else could Michael's men use the pipe for?
 35-Why would anyone search the castle find it empty?
 36-What would happen if many men attacked the castle?
 37-Why was Michael's plan described as being clever?
 38-Who knew about Michael's plan?

Quotations

"You'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?"

- 1-Who was the speaker? To whom? 2-What did the speaker blame the listener for?
 3-What did these words show us about the speaker?

" Let us hope that it's not necessary. "

- 1-Who said these words? To whom? 2-What was the speaker talking about?
 3-Where were they?

"I'm sorry to hear this. I hope my brother feels better soon. "

- 1-Who said this? To whom? 2- What was wrong with the speakers brother?
 3-Where were they?

"Good . Perhaps you would like to stay and eat with us."

- 1-Who was the speaker? To whom? 2-Where were they? 3-What was the occasion ?

"That Rupert's the worst criminal of them all !"

- 1-Who said this? To whom? 2-What does the speaker mean by "all"?
 3-Who employed Rupert and his fellows?

"He never comes here anymore. He works at the castle now."

- 1-Who said this? To whom? 2-About whom was the speaker speaking?
 3-Why did the speaker ask about " He"?

" I remember you when you stayed with us. "

- 1-Who said this? To whom? 2-Where were they? 3-What was the occasion ?

"But you can't say that in public, can you? "

- 1-Who said these words? To whom? 2-What couldn't the listener say in public?
 3-What evil thing did the speaker do before leaving?

"Let's shake hands."

- 1-Who said this? To whom? 2-Where was the speaker at that time?
 3-What did the speaker do then?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1-Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz and 10 gentlemen left for Strelsau.
2. The Duke was the man to trust to keep the future of Ruritania.
3. The Marshal was ready to keep Antoinette safe.
4. Flavia was happy about the king's trip to Zenda .
- 5- Detchard was the animal, Rassendyll would hunt in Zenda.
- 6-Michael's father was not royal.
- 7-Flavia promised to do what was right for England.
- 8- Michael sent all the Six Men to welcome the king.
- 9-In Zenda, Rassendyll stayed at the summer house.
- 10-Michael couldn't meet his brother as he was busy.
- 11-Rassendyll and Fritz went to have a meal at the castle in Zenda •
- 12-The hotel owner's son recognized the king.
- 13-The king wanted the girl to help him see Rupert.
- 14-Three men shot Sapt in the woods.
- 15-Detchard was rude when he called the king, Rassendyll .
- 16-Johann loved Michael so much.
- 17-The pipe could be used for hiding anyone under sand.
- 18-Rupert said that the king was dead.
- 19-Everyone in the castle is a criminal, except the Duke.
- 20-Rassendyll hoped that one of the king's men would betray him.

Chapter 7

accent	لهجة / لكنة	find out	يكتشف	pull it up	يسحب لاعلى
act out	يمثل / يتظاهر	forgive	يسامح	relieve	يرتاح
afterwards	بعد ذلك	formal	رسمي	reward	يكافئ
ahead of	أمام	furious	غاضب جداً	rope	الحبل
ambassador	سفير	giant	عملاق	row	يجدف
attack	يهاجم	go free	يذهب حر	serious	خطيراً / جاد
boat	قارب	hidden	مخفى	shots	طلقات
boots	حذاء	injury	إصابة	stab	يطعن
catch up with	يلحق	joy	فرح / سعادة	step back	يرجع للخلف
cry	يبكى	keys	مفاتيح	stick	عصا
date	موعد / يحدد موعد	knock at	يطرق علي	sword	سيف
deep in thought	تفكير عميق	lead to	يؤدي الى	take off	يخلع
difficulty	صعوبة	lift	يرفع	Tie	يربط
disappear	يختفي	lights	اضواء	trust	يثق / الثقة
discover	يكتشف	meanwhile	في نفس الاثناء	voices	صوت انسان
escape	يهرب	otherwise	والا	weak	ضعيف
examine	يفحص	paid him well	دفع له جيداً	weapons	أسلحة
far end	الطرف البعيد	party	مجموعة	wedding	الزفاف
fasten	يثبت	Pipe	ماسورة	whichever	ايهما
fight	يصارع	Plan	خطة	whistle	يصفر
filled with	مملوء بـ	prisoner	سجين	windy	رياحي

Questions & Answers

- What were the three pieces of news which arrived at the Tarlenheim country house?
- *People of Strelsau were worried when they heard that the king was badly injured while he was hunting in the woods. Michael thought that Rassendyll was badly injured by Rupert. The Princess was worried and wanted to see the king.*
- How do you know that Rassendyll trusted Johann?
- *After Johann told Rassendyll about the Duke's plans, he allowed him to go back to Zenda.*
- Why was the Princess relieved when she saw the king's injury? - *Because it wasn't serious.*
- What was the bad news about the real king? - *He was looking weak and ill.*
- Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz were loyal to the king. Discuss
- *On hearing of his illness, they realised that they had to do something quickly.*
- What did Rassendyll consider the strangest thing in the history of any country?
- *The king's brother and a pretend king, near a quiet country town during a time of peace, acted out a war for the life of a sick king with just a few people knowing about it.*
- How did Rassendyll and his men go to Zenda? How long did they take?
- *They took a quiet back road towards the Castle of Zenda. It took them an hour to get there.*
- What did they do when they reached the castle? - *They ordered the seven men to wait with the horses while they continued on foot up the hill to the moat around the castle. Sapt tied a rope to a tree. Rassendyll took off his boots and used the rope to climb down into the water.*
- The water was not cold so it helped Rassendyll. Illustrate.
- *Although the night was windy and wet, it had been a warm and sunny day so the water was not cold, so Rassendyll swam without difficulty round the castle walls.*
- Why couldn't anyone see Rassendyll although he heard their voices? - *As it was so dark.*
- What did Rassendyll see from the King's window? - *Rassendyll saw the giant pipe which led from the king's window to the moat and he could see light coming from its far end.*
- How was Rassendyll lucky when he saw the boat next to the pipe? - *Max Holf was in the boat carrying a large gun but he was sleeping so Rassendyll went up to the boat and stabbed him to death.*
- How did Rassendyll justify his killing Max Holf? - *Rassendyll said that it was war.*
- What did Rassendyll find the pipe like? - *The bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall.*
- Why did the pipe move a little although it was very heavy?

- *Because the bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall.*
16. What did Rassendyll hear when he was examining the pipe?
- *He heard Detchard talking to the real king.*
17. Show that the king was in despair in his imprisonment.
- *The king asked Detchard why Michael didn't kill him quickly.*
18. How did Rassendyll go back to the place where Sapt was waiting?
- *He rowed the boat back to the rope.*
19. Why was it difficult for anyone to hear the boat? - *Because the wind was blowing hard.*
20. What did Rassendyll do to Max's body?
- *He tied the rope round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up.*
21. What happened when Sapt whistled to the seven men to come and get them?
- *When the seven men got nearer, they fought with Michael's men. Sapt and Rassendyll heard shots and loud cries and then a voice call out.*
22. What was the voice saying? - *He said seven men had got him and asked Rupert to save himself.*
23. Why couldn't Rupert see Rassendyll or Sapt? - *As it was so dark.*
24. Why could Rupert manage to escape from them? - *Because he was too quick. He waved his sword at Rassendyll and cut the stick in half and disappeared into the night.*
25. The seven men were loyal and brave. Illustrate.
- *They managed to kill Lauengram and Krafstein but they lost three of them.*
26. The murder of three men wasn't the only sorrow for Rassendyll. Explain. - *Rassendyll was sad for losing the three men who were killed in the fight. He was also worried about the king's health.*
27. Why did the Chief of the Police in Strelsau visit Rassendyll (the pretend king)?
- *He told Rassendyll that the British ambassador had reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll had disappeared near the town of Zenda. They had found Rassendyll's bags at a nearby train station.*
28. What did Mr Featherly tell the police about Rassendyll?
- *Mr Featherly told the police that Rassendyll was travelling with Madam de Mauban.*
29. What did Rassendyll tell the Chief of the Police about Antoinette de Mauban?
- *Rassendyll told him that Antoinette and her servants were guests of Duke Michael.*
30. What did Rassendyll order the Chief of the Police to do?
- *He ordered him to go back to Strelsau and tell the ambassador what he knew and asked him to return in two weeks. Rassendyll (the king) would tell him what he had found.*
31. How did Rassendyll feel after the visit of the Chief of the Police?
- *He felt worried as his game had almost been discovered.*
32. What did Rassendyll try to persuade Rupert to do? - *To let the real king go free.*
33. Rupert had no principlesءمبادئ and he was a bloody man. Discuss.
- *He asked Rassendyll to attack the castle bravely and kill Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the king. That would leave both of them alive. Rassendyll would be king and he could have a reward.*
34. Why was the relation between Michael and Rupert not a good one?
- *Rupert said that Michael wasn't a good man. He made Rupert angry.*
35. What did Rupert ask Rassendyll before he rode off down the road?
- *To think carefully about his plan.*
36. Do you think Rassendyll would agree to Rupert's wicked plan to be king?
- *No, because Rassendyll was peaceful, honest, reliable and honourable. He was ready to sacrifice his life to rescue the real king. He was a man of principles.*
37. What could Sapt see when he met Rassendyll on that day? - *Rassendyll was deep in thought.*
38. From whom did the boy bring the message to Rassendyll? - *From Antoinette de Mauban.*
39. Why did Antoinette send Rassendyll the 2nd message?
- *Antoinette asked Rassendyll to rescue her from the Duke who discovered that she helped Rassendyll that night in the summer house so he imprisoned her in his mansion.*
40. Duke Michael couldn't trust Antoinette de Mauban any more. Illustrate
- *After Michael had known that Antoinette had betrayed him and revealed his secrets to Rassendyll, he kept her prisoner in his mansion.*
41. What did Rassendyll feel after reading Antoinette's 2nd message?
- *He felt that he could do nothing to help either Madame de Mauban or the king.*

42. Why were the people in Strelsau angry with the king (Rassendyll)?
- The people in Strelsau didn't like the fact that their king had been away from them.
43. What did Rassendyll do to keep the people in Strelsau happy?
- Rassendyll sent his messenger to tell them that he and Flavia had arranged a date for their wedding.
44. How did the people in Strelsau receive the news of the wedding? **- With great joy.**
45. According to Johann, How did Michael receive the wedding news? **- He was furious.**
46. Why did Michael ask for a doctor to examine the real king?
- Because the king was seriously ill. The Duke wanted to keep him alive or Rassendyll would be king forever
47. What did the doctor advise the Duke after examining the king? **- To set the king free at once.**
48. How did the Duke punish the doctor for his honesty? **- Michael decided that the doctor would have to stay with the king until he was better or died whichever came first.**
49. How far was Antoinette de Mauban helpful?
- In addition to helping Rassendyll, she looked after the real king in the Castle of Zenda.
50. Who were guarding the real king at all times? **- Two of the remaining famous six.**
51. Why did Rassendyll and Sapt pay Johann well?
- Because Johann didn't want to return to the castle so they paid him well to go back and act as their spy.
52. How far was Johann's information important to them? **- Johan told them where all the people stay at night in the castle and the mansion, and who had the keys to the doors.**
53. Why did Rassendyll offer Johann 50 thousand pieces of gold?
- To give a letter to Antoinette and to open the front door to the mansion at 2.00 am.
54. How could Rassendyll benefit from the new servants at the castle? **- The new servants didn't know that the king was a prisoner there. If they saw Rassendyll they would think that he was the king.**
55. How was Rassendyll cunning and wise when he planned to save the king?
- Sapt would enter the front door of the mansion and tie the new servants if they refused to help.
- At the same time, Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room.
- The Duke would come to see what was happening so they could take him.
- The house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed they were having a ball. Marshall Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess.
56. Why was Johann asked to open the front door at two o'clock in the morning?
- To help Sapt and his men enter the mansion and take control.
57. What role could Antoinette de Mauban play in Rassendyll's plan? **- On seeing Sapt getting into the castle, she would cry out for help to get Michael out of his room .So Sapt could take him.**
58. What would they do with the two dangerous men who guarded the king?
- Rassendyll's men had to move quickly before they could hurt the king.
59. What was the Marshall's role in that plan? **- If they had not returned, he would march to the castle and ask to see the king at once. If the king wasn't there, he would quickly take the Princess back to the capital where she would become Queen.**
60. What did Rassendyll do to be well hidden near the drawbridge? **- Rassendyll left his horse and gun in some trees, tied some rope to another tree and climbed down into the water.**
61. What did Rassendyll see when he was in the moat?
- Rassendyll saw the pipe was fastened to the wall and no light showed. He saw the lights were on in the windows to the Duke's and Madame de Mauban's rooms.
62. What did Rupert and De Gautet do?
- They crossed the drawbridge to the castle before they lifted the drawbridge for the night.
63. What was the strange thing Rassendyll noticed about Rupert?
- Rupert returned alone, climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across then he climbed some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion.

Quotations

1. "Time for your sleep."
 a) Who said that quotation? To whom? **- Detchard to the real king**
 b) Where were they? **- Inside the castle**
 c) What did that prove? **-The King was ill and badly treated by Michael's men.**

2. "Why doesn't my brother kill me now?"
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *The real king to Detchard*
 - b) What did it mean? - *The real king couldn't stand the pain and he was desperate.*
 - c) What was the occasion? - *The King was locked in the castle by his brother. He became very ill.*
3. The Duke doesn't want you to die, not yet anyway. Sleep well."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Detchard to the real king.*
 - b) Where was it said? - *In the castle of Zenda.*
 - c) Why didn't his brother want to kill him? - *As he was afraid Rassendyll would stay king forever.*
4. "They have got me, Rupert! There are seven of them. Save yourself."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *One of Michael's men to Rupert*
 - b) About whom was he speaking? - *Sapt's men.*
 - c) Where were they? - *About a hundred metres away from the castle.*
5. "Yes, I do. I believe she and her servants were guests of Duke Michael."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to the Chief of the Police.*
 - b) About whom were they talking? - *About Antoinette de Mauban.*
 - c) Why was the listener there? - *To ask about Rassendyll who disappeared near Zenda.*
6. "Go back to Strelsau and tell the ambassador what you know."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to the Chief of the Police.*
 - b) Which ambassador did they speak about? - *The ambassador of England.*
7. "I'll look into this for you. Return in two weeks and I will tell you what I've found."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to the Chief of the Police*
 - b) What was he looking into? - *The problem of the disappeared man (Rassendyll)*
8. "How is my brother today?"
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Rupert.*
 - b) Where were they? - *In Tarlenheim house.*
 - c) About whom was the speaker asking? - *Duke Michael.*
9. "He's well. He hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*
 - b) Who does "He" refer to? - *It refers to Duke Michael*
10. "You are young. Why are you doing this?"
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Rupert.*
 - b) What was the listener doing? - *He was helping Michael with his plan to be the king.*
 - c) What was the speaker trying to do? - *He was trying to make Rupert betray Michael.*
11. "If you let your prisoner go free, I can help you. You don't have to work for my brother"
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Rupert.*
 - b) What does "my brother" refer to? - *It refers to Duke Michael*
 - c) Who was the prisoner? - *Rudolf Elphberg, the real king.*
12. "You may be right. Attack the castle bravely .I'll tell you when."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*
 - b) What did the speaker want as a result of this plan?
- *All the men die except Rassendyll and Rupert. Rassendyll will stay King and Rupert will have a reward.*
13. "But Fritz and Sapt must die, and so must Michael and the king."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll*
 - b) What did this tell us about Rupert? - *He was a bloody man.*
14. "That will leave two men alive: you and me. You will stay as the king and I'll have a reward."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*
 - b) Why would the others die? - *Because they knew the truth about what had happened.*
15. "Would you really work against Michael?"
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Rupert.*
 - b) What did the speaker want the listener to do? - *To help him get rid of the duke.*
 - c) What was the reply to that question? - *He said the duke was a bad man and he made him angry.*
16. "He is not a good man. He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night."
 - a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*

b) Who is the speaker talking about? - *He is talking about Duke Michael.*

c) What is the speaker's plan? - *Rassendyll will attack the castle bravely. Fritz and Sapt will die, and so will Michael and the King. Rassendyll remains a king and Rupert will be rewarded.*

17. "Think carefully of my plan."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*

b) What is the speaker's plan? - *Rassendyll will attack the castle bravely. Fritz and Sapt will die, and so will Michael and the King. Rassendyll remains a king and Rupert will be rewarded.*

18. "The Duke discovered I helped you that night in the summer house."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Antoinette de Mauban to Rassendyll. (in a letter).*

b) How did the speaker help the listener? - *She helped him escape from Michael's men.*

19. "He is now keeping me a prisoner in his mansion because he can't trust me."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Antoinette de Mauban to Rassendyll (in a letter).*

b) Who does "He" refer to? - *It refers to Duke Michael*

c) Why can't he trust the speaker? - *She helped Rassendyll escape from Michael's men.*

20. "Please, if you can, rescue me from this house of murders."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Antoinette de Mauban to Rassendyll (in a letter).*

b) Where was the speaker at that time? - *In the duke's mansion.*

c) Why was he / she there? - *Because Michael discovered that she helped Rassendyll.*

21. "I'll give you fifty thousand pieces of gold if you do what I ask you tomorrow night."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann.*

b) What does the speaker ask the other person to do? - *He asks him to open the door at 2 o'clock.*

c) Why does he intend to do this? - *To rescue the real King and Antoinette de Mauban.*

22. "I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do they know the king's a prisoner there?"

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann.*

b) Do they know the king's a prisoner there? - *No, they don't.*

23. "No, they don't know who the prisoner is."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Johann to Rassendyll.*

b) Who did "they" refer to? - *The new servants in the mansion.*

c) Which prisoner was the speaker talking about? - *The real King.*

24. "So if they saw me, they would think I was the king?"

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann.*

b) Why would they think so? - *Because they didn't know that the real king was the prisoner.*

25. "Good. Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann.*

b) Where were they? - *At the Tarlenheim house.*

c) What was the letter about?

- *Antoinette's role in the plan which was to shout asking for help when she sees Sapt and his men.*

26. "Then, at two o'clock in the morning, open the front door to the mansion. Now go."

a) Who said that quotation? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Johann*

b) Why will this person open the front door to the mansion?

- *To let Sapt his men enter as a part of the plan.*

27. "Let's go across before they lift the drawbridge for the night."

a) Who says this to whom? - *It is said by Rupert to De Gatitet.*

b) What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to? - *It refers to Michael's guards.*

c) Where are they? - *They are on the drawbridge to the castle.*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1- Four pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house.

2-People of Strelsau heard that the king was badly injured and they were pleased.

3- Sapt told me that Princess Flavia had ordered him to take her to see me.

4-The Princess was worried to see that my injury wasn't serious.

5-Rassendyll joined Sapt and Fritz with eight men.

6-Rassendyll used the robe to climb down into the castle.

7- Rassendyll saw the giant tree that led from his window to the moat.

8-The guard in the boat was Detchard.

- 10-The top of the pipe wasn't fastened to the wall.
- 11- "Why doesn't my brother save me now?" said the king in a weak voice.
- 13- Rupert cut Rassendyll's stick with his knife.
- 14-Lauengram and Krafstein were killed by Sapt
- 15- We went home with lucky hearts for our friends.
- 16- Two of Rassendyll's men died in the fight.
- 17-The British ambassador had reported that a German man called Rassendyll disappeared
- 18- "If you let your prisoner go free, I will kill you." Said Rassendyll
- 19- Antoinette asked Rassendyll to rescue her from the hotel
- 20-The Duke set a date for the wedding ceremony.
- 21-Johann took a present to Antoinette de Mauban.
- 22-The Duke became so ill that a doctor was fetched.
- 23- Rupert made an evil plan to be king.
- 24- Rupert wanted Sapt and Fritz to be dismissed.
- 25- Antoinette de Mauban was rewarded by Michael.
- 26- The Duke was delighted to hear about the wedding.
- 27- Antoinette de Mauban was helping to kill the king.
- 28- They paid Johann to return to the castle and work as their doctor.
- 29- Rassendyll would give 100 pieces of gold to Johann.
- 30-Johann was asked to close the front door.
- 31- Antoinette would cry for pain from her room.
- 32-The Marshall would take Flavia to Strelsau to be a servant
- 33-Four of the remaining famous six were guarding the king.
- 34-If the tree was lifted; no one could enter the castle.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer these questions.

1. What three pieces of news arrive at Tarlenheim the next day?
- *The people of Strelsau heard that the King was badly injured while hunting. The Duke thought he was badly injured. The Princess ordered Marshall Strakencz to take her to Tarlenheim to see the King.*
2. Why do Rassendyll and the others go to the castle at night?
- *They want to see it so that they can make plans to rescue the King.*
3. Why does Rassendyll kill Max Holf? - *He is guarding the King's prison. Rassendyll kills him because this is a war for the King's life and Max is working for the enemy.*
4. Why do the seven gentlemen go with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle? What do they do? - *They go to protect the horses and the others in case the Duke's men attack. They fight with the Duke's men (and three of them are killed).*
5. Who gets killed in the fight in the woods? Who gets away?
- *Two of the Duke's Six Men get killed, Lauengram and Kafstein. Three of Rassendyll's men get killed also. Rupert Hentzau escapes.*
6. Why were Rassendyll's bags found at a train station near Zenda? Why is the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?
- *Rassendyll had sent the bags ahead to the station on the morning of the day he met the King in the woods. He never went to the station to get them because he was pretending to be the King. The Chief of Police is looking for Rassendyll because he has disappeared. (His family has not heard from him.)*
7. Rassendyll meets Rupert the next day while they are out riding. What plan does Rupert offer to Rassendyll?
- *He offers to help him attack the castle. But Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the King must all die. Then Rassendyll can stay as King and Rupert will be given a reward (money).*
8. Why is Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?
- *He discovered that she helped Rassendyll in the summer house. He cannot trust her now.*
9. A doctor has been brought to see the real King in his prison. Why doesn't Duke Michael let the doctor leave? - *Because the doctor would tell people that the King is a prisoner.*
10. Why does Rassendyll ask Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at two o'clock in the morning? - *So the Duke will go to help her. At the same time Johann will open the front door to let in Sapt and Fritz with their men.*

11. Why does Rupert Hentzau swim across the moat to go back to the mansion? Why doesn't he use the drawbridge? - ***The drawbridge has been pulled up for the night. He is doing something secret, so he does not use the bridge.***

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

1. The Duke thinks that Rassendyll was injured while hunting. (F)

- ***He knows that Rupert injured him.***

2. The real King is weak and ill. (T)

3. Max Holf sees Rassendyll near the pipe. (F)

- ***Max Holf is asleep in the boat and doesn't see him.***

4. One of Rassendyll's men calls out, "They've got me, Rupert!" (F)

- ***One of the Duke's men says this.***

5. Two of Rassendyll's men are killed. (F) - ***Three are killed.***

6. The British Ambassador reports that an Englishman has disappeared near Zenda. (T)

7. Rassendyll does not want the Chief of Police to ask about him because he might discover the truth about the King. (T)

8. Rupert offers to help rescue the King. (F)

- ***He offers to help attack the castle, but the King, Michael, Sapt and Fritz must all die.***

9. Antoinette de Mauban asks Rassendyll to rescue her from the Duke. (T)

10. Rassendyll tells Johann to open the front door of the mansion at midnight. (F)

- ***He tells him to open it at two in the morning.***

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"Go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what you know. I'll look into this for you."

1. Who does Rassendyll say this to? - ***Rassendyll says this to the Chief of Police of Strelsau.***

2. What is it that Rassendyll will look into?

- ***Rassendyll will look into the case of the missing Englishman Mr Rassendyll.***

3. Why doesn't he want the Chief of Police to investigate about the missing man?

- ***Because he might find out that Rassendyll is pretending to be the King.***

"I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"

1. Who says this to Johann? - ***Rassendyll says it.***

2. What does Johann answer?

- ***He answers that the servants do not know that the prisoner is the King.***

3. Why is that important? - ***Rassendyll wants to know if the servants will think he is the King (and obey him or surrender to him when he attacks the castle).***

"He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."

1. Who says this to Rassendyll? - ***Rupert Hentzau says this.***

2. Who is the person talking about? - ***He is talking about Duke Michael.***

3. What is the person's plan? - ***He will help Rassendyll attack the castle. Hentzau will decide the time. But Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the real King must all die. Then Rassendyll will remain King and Hentzau will have a reward (and escape).***

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

1. What was the Princess reaction on hearing about the King's injury?

2. How was the situation in Ruritania strange and puzzling محير؟

3. Why did Rassendyll go down into the water?

4. What did Mr Featherly tell the police?

5. What did Rassendyll tell the Police Chief about Antoinette?

6. What were the King's orders to the Police Chief?

7. Why did Rassendyll feel worried after the visit of the Police Chief?

8. What was Rassendyll's offer to Rupert?

9. Why wasn't the relation between Rupert and Michael a good one?

10. Who delivered a message from Antoinette to Rassendyll?

11. What did Antoinette tell Rassendyll in her letter?

12. How did the Duke punish Antoinette for helping Rassendyll?

13. What did Antoinette beg توسلت Rassendyll to do?

14. Why were people in Strelsau angry with their king?
15. What did Rassendyll do to make people of Strelsau happy?
16. How did people receive the news of the marriage?
17. What was the Duke's reaction to the news about the wedding?
18. How far was the King seriously ill?
19. What was the doctor's opinion about the King's illness?
20. How did Antoinette show her kind nature طبيعة عطوفية?
21. Why did Johann return to the castle against his own will ضد اراداته?
22. What important information did Johann tell Rassendyll about the castle?
23. What fact didn't the new servants at the castle know?

Quotations

1. " Time for your sleep."
 - 1-Who said this? To whom? 2- Where were they? 3- What did that prove?
- 2-" Why doesn't my brother kill me now? "
 - 1- Who was the speaker? To whom? 2- What was the occasion?
 - 3-Why didn't his brother want to kill him?
- 3-" They've got me, Rupert. There are seven of them. Save yourself!"
 - 1-Who was the speaker? 2-About whom was he speaking? 3-Where were they?
- 4-"I believe she and her servants were guests of Duke Michael !"
 - 1-Who said this? To whom? 2-About whom were they talking?
 - 3-Why was the listener there?
- 5-" Would you really work against Michael?"
 - 1-Who was the speaker? To whom? 2-What did the speaker want the listener to do?
 - 3-What was the reply to that question?
- 6-"No, they don't know who the prisoner is."
 - 1-Who said this? To whom? 2-What does "they" refer to?
 - 3-Which prisoner was the speaker talking about?
- 7-"Good. Tomorrow, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban • "
 - 1-Who said these words? To whom? 2-Where were they?
 - 3-What was the letter about?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1-There was a man in the hut guarding the pipe?
- 2-The man in the boat had a knife.
- 3- Rupert cut Rassendyll's stick with his knife.
- 4-Two of Rassendyll's men died in the fight.
- 5-Flavia ordered the Police Chief to take her to Zenda.
- 6-The man in the boat was Johann's cousin.
- 7-Detchard asked the King to sleep well.
- 8-Sapt climbed down into the water to have a look at the pipe.
9. Rassendyll was angry as Rudolf had escaped.
- 10-The king asked Detchard why his brother didn't meet him.
- 11-Antoinette asked Rassendyll to rescue her from the hotel.
- 12-The Duke set a date for the wedding ceremony.
- 13-Johann took a present to Antoinette de Mauban.
- 14-The Duke became so ill that a doctor was fetched.
- 15-Johann would work as a soldier for Rassendyll.
- 16-The French Ambassador wanted to find Rassendvll who got lost.
- 17-Flavia and her servants were guests to Duke Michael.
- 18-The farmer had to stay beside the King till he got better or died.
- 19-Four of the Six were guarding the king all the time.
- 20-If the draw way was lifted up, no one would get into the castle.

Chapter 8

amazement	دهشة	follow	يتتبع / يطارد	reward	يكافئ
ambassador	سفير	forgive	يسامح	run off	يهرب
approach	يقترّب	frightened-Looking	يبدو خائف	sage	مرحلة
argument	جدال / مناقشة	gently	بلطف	shadow	ظل
bandage	ضمادة	grass	حشائش	shoulder	كتف
beat	يضرب / يهزم	ignore	يتجاهل	somehow	بطريقة ما
briefly	باختصار	illness	مرض	stage	مرحلة
by chance	بالصدفة	lock	يغلق	steps	درجات السلم
call out	ينادي	loud cry	بكاء عالي	strike	يضرب
chain	يقيد بالسلاسل	make sure	يتأكد	struck	ضرب / اصاب
cheek	خد	marshal	المشير	sword fight	مبارزة بالسيف
chest	الصدر	meanwhile	في نفس الوقت	swordsman	مبارز بالسيف
coach	حافلة	moan	يتأوه	Tear- tore - torn	يمزق
confident	واثق	nervously	بعصبية	together	معا
corner	ركن	nonsense	لا معنى له	tricks	خدع
cut	جرح	point at	يشير الى	unlocked	مفتوح
disappear	يختفي	Position	مكانة / وظيفة	unseen	غير مرئي
disappointed	محبط	punish	يعاقب	warn	يحذر
duty	واجب	realise	يدرك	weakly	بضعف
evil plans	خطط شريرة	rescue	ينقذ	whisper	يهمس
fear	خوف	respect	يحترم	wounded	مصاب

Questions & Answers

- What did Rassendyll do after Rupert disappeared into the mansion?
- *He slowly climbed out of the moat and waited by the drawbridge gate next to the castle.*
- Who were left to protect the real king? - *Detchard. Bersonin and De Gautet.*
- What did Rassendyll wish when he was waiting by the drawbridge gate next to the castle?
- *He wished to have the keys to the king's room.*
- Why did Antoinette give a cry at one o'clock in the morning?
- *Because she was afraid of Rupert who had entered her room.*
- What did Rassendyll think when he heard Antoinette's cry?
- *He thought that she cried an hour earlier than he asked her in his message.*
- How did Rassendyll get ready after the cry?
- *He pulled out his sword and stood ready for what might happen.*
- Why did Rupert go to Antoinette's room? - *To punish her for writing letters to Rassendyll*
- What was Michael's reaction to Rupert's accusation about Antoinette?
- *Michael told Rupert that Antoinette was his guest and Rupert deserved to be punished.*
- How did the argument between Michael and Rupert end? - *Rupert killed Michael.*
- Why did Rupert strike his sword at Johann? - *Because he knew that Johann was Rassendyll's spy.*
- Why was Rassendyll worried about Johann's life after the stab? طعنة
- *Because Johann was supposed to open the front door for Rassendyll's men.*
- How far was Johann's life important to Rassendyll?
- *If Johann was killed, no one would open the door and the king's rescue plan would fail.*
- Rassendyll thought that Rupert would be caught but Rupert escaped. Explain - *Rupert was fighting many men and Rassendyll thought he would be caught. However, at the next moment, there was a loud cry and Rupert jumped out of the window and down into the moat below, where he swam away .*
- Who killed De Gautet? How? - *Rassendyll struck him with his sword.*
- How did Rassendyll make use of killing De Gautet? - *Rassendyll found three keys in De Gautet's clothes. At last Rassendyll could enter the room where the king was being kept prisoner.*
- What did Rassendyll see when he opened the first door? - *He found himself at the top of some steps which led into a cold, dark room .The only light came from a small candle in a corner*

17. Where did the voices Rassendyll heard come from?
- *From room where the king was kept prisoner.*
18. What was Detchard saying when the door was suddenly opened?
- *He said, " We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble."*
19. How did Bersonin meet his end?
- *Rassendyll struck him with his sword when he appeared from the door.*
20. Why was the king in real danger?
- *Because Detchard closed the door as he understood there was danger.*
21. Why was Rassendyll relieved when he opened the second door? - *Because he saw Detchard being held by the king's doctor. The king was in one corner, weak from illness and chains.*
22. The brave doctor paid his life for his honesty and his loyalty .Illustrate.
- *The doctor was so weak to hold Detchard for so long and before Rassendyll could help him, Detchard broke free and killed the poor doctor with his sword.*
23. Why couldn't the king help the doctor? - *As he was weak from illness and from the chains.*
24. Why was Rassendyll lucky when he fought with Detchard? - *Detchard didn't have a gun .The king helped Rassendyll by pushing the legs of the chair against Detchard's body.*
25. Why was it dangerous for Rassendyll to fight against Detchard?
- *Detchard was a much better swordsman than Rassendyll and he knew all the tricks.*
26. But for the king's help, Rassendyll would soon have died. Discuss
- *Detchard cut Rassendyll on the arm and would soon have killed him but the king pushed the legs of the chair against Detchard's body.*
27. How did Rassendyll manage to kill Detchard? - *The king pushed the legs of the chair against Detchard's body.Detchard found it hard to stand up. That made him angry, and he struck the king hard with his sword but he fell over the doctor's body. It was easy for Rassendyll to kill him.*
28. Why was Rassendyll happy when he heard the king moaning?ينين
- *Because he thought that the king had been killed by Detchard but the king was still alive.*
29. How far was Rupert a fierce fighterمقاتل شرس؟ - *Rupert stood on the drawbridge defying Michael and his men to come and to fight. He killed the Duke. He also cut Rassendyll.*
30. How was Antoinette about to kill Rupert?
- *She had a gun and she pointed it at Rupert who jumped into the water below the bridge.*
31. When did Rassendyll decide to chase Rupert? - *When Sapt and his men arrived at the front door, Rassendyll felt confident that the king would be safe, so he decided to run after Rupert.*
32. Why did Rupert swim faster than Rassendyll? - *Because Rassendyll's arm was wounded.*
33. How did Rupert try to escape from Rassendyll? - *Rupert swam to where the rope was tied .He quickly climbed up. He ran in front of Rassendyll in the forest. He found a boy riding to market and quickly pulled him from his horse and took his place.*
34. How did Rassendyll catch up with Rupert? How was Rupert a kind thief?
- *Rupert tried to give the boy some money to be quiet so Rassendyll caught up with him.*
35. What did Rupert ask Rassendyll about in the forest?
- *Rupert asked him why he didn't follow his plan. He asked what happened to the king.*
36. What did Rassendyll answer to Rupert's questions during the fight?
- *Rassendyll told him the king was hurt but he was alive. Rassendyll told him that he was the last of the Six Men .Rassendyll asked him to get off his horse and fight like a man*
37. Why did Rassendyll tell Rupert that he was the last of the Six Men? - *To weaken his spirits.*
38. Why was it easy for Rupert to push Rassendyll away with his sword?
- *Because Rupert was on his horse but Rassendyll was on his feet.*
39. How did the arrival of Fritz save Rassendyll from certain deathموت محقق؟
- *Rupert rode at him with his sword held high.*
40. Rupert was wise when he didn't continue the fight with Rassendyll in the forest. Discuss.
- *Rupert understood that he couldn't fight both Rassendyll and Fritz so he ran away fast.*
41. Why didn't Fritz obey Rassendyll to go after Rupert?
- *Because Fritz saw that Rassendyll didn't look well.*
42. Why was the boy surprised when Rassendyll asked about the king?
- *Because the boy thought that Rassendyll was the king.*

43. What did Fritz and Antoinette de Mauban tell Rassendyll?
- They told him what had happened that night at the castle and the events leading up to it.
44. How did Antoinette de Mauban get acquainted with the Duke?
- The duke met her in Paris and asked her to Ruritania to see the coronation. Antoinette respected the Duke and accepted to be his guest.
45. Why did Antoinette change her attitude towards the Duke? **- She didn't like his evil plans.**
46. Why did the Duke decide to punish Antoinette de Mauban?
- Because he found out that she had warned Rassendyll in Strelsau.
47. How did the Duke trick Antoinette de Mauban?
- He invited her with her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he made sure they couldn't leave in order to stop her from telling anyone about his plans.
48. How was Antoinette still able to send letters to Rassendyll?
- Johann was Rassendyll's spy in the castle.
49. Why did Rupert choose the wrong time to punish Antoinette?
- Because it was the night chosen for attacking the castle.
50. How did Michael meet his end? **- When he came to defend Antoinette, Rupert killed him.**
51. What wrong idea did Rupert have about Rassendyll?
- He believed that Rassendyll would like to stay as the king.
52. Why couldn't Johann open the front door at two o'clock as planned?
- Because he was helping the Duke who was wounded by Rupert.
53. Where was the king taken from his prison?
- Sapt covered the king's face and took him to the mansion
54. Who looked after the injured king?
- Antoinette helped to look after king till another doctor could arrive.
55. Why did Fritz go to look for Rassendyll in the forest?
- As Fritz knew that Rassendyll must have run off into the forest after Rupert.
56. What did Sapt ask Antoinette and Johann to do?
- He asked them to keep the secret about the real king.
57. What did the men and the servants think about the king's injury?
- They thought that the king was injured while he was rescuing the prisoner who ran after Rupert.
58. What was the news sent to the Princess at Tarlenheim?
- The king was hurt but he was still alive and she should wait at Tarlenheim for him.
59. Why didn't the people of Strelsau sympathize with **يتعاطف مع** the Duke's death? **- They thought that the brave king had fought with his brother because he had kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the king. The Duke had tried to kill the king who was injured but the evil Duke had died.**
60. Why did the Princess disobey Sapt's order to stay at Tarlenheim?
- As she wanted to see the injured king so she asked the Marshall to take her to Zenda.
61. Why did Rassendyll hide behind a tree when the princess arrived in the forest?
- He didn't want her to see him. He didn't want her to discover his real character at that moment.
62. Who attracted the Princess's attention to Rassendyll's hiding place?
- The boy who was following them told the Princess that the king was behind the tree.
63. Why did Fritz and Rassendyll fail to keep the boy quiet?
- As it was too late as the coach stopped and the Marshall leant out to talk to the boy.
64. What did the Marshall tell the boy?
- The Marshall said that what the boy said was nonsense as the king was injured in the castle.
65. What did The Marshall tell Sapt who came to meet them?
- The Marshall told Sapt that the boy said the king was over there behind that tree.
66. When did Sapt's smile disappear?
- When the boy insisted on guiding them to Rassendyll's (the king's) place.
67. What did Rassendyll do when the boy guided the Princess to his hiding place?
- Rassendyll sat down behind the tree putting his hands over his face.
68. The Princess accused Sapt that he was playing a game. Illustrate.
- The princess had been told that the king was injured in the castle. Now she saw him hidden behind a tree so she thought there was a game.

69. Why did the Princess look surprised than frightened? - *The Princess didn't believe that the man behind the tree wasn't the king until Rassendyll told her to forgive him as he wasn't the king.*
70. Where did Rassendyll stay in the castle? - *In the rooms which had been the king's prison.*
71. What news did Johann tell Rassendyll?
- *The king was getting better. Sapt, the Princess and the Marshall had returned to Strelsau. Everyone was talking about the prisoner of Zenda and who he could be.*
72. According to the people, why did the Duke lock the prisoner of Zenda up?
- *Because he was an English friend of the king who knew about Michael's evil plans.*
73. What did the king tell Rassendyll when he saw him in the castle?
- *He told him that they were the same even in the injury. He thanked Rassendyll and asked him to come with him to Strelsau and tell everyone about the brave things he had done.*
74. Who objected to the king's idea to take Rassendyll with him to Strelsau? Why?
- *Sapt objected and said that it wasn't possible. Rassendyll said that Sapt was right.*
75. Why did the king think that people wouldn't be surprised to see him different?
- *As they knew that the king was injured and the injury had changed him.*
76. Give four reasons why the king was greatly indebted مدین to Rassendyll?
- *Rassendyll replaced the king in the coronation and put an end to Michael's ambitions.*
- *He gained popularity to the new king among the poor people.*
- *He was ready to sacrifice himself to save the king's life.*
- *He had taught the king what a true king should be.*
77. What made Rassendyll's heart beat louder in his chest?
- *The thought of Rupert who had almost beaten him.*
78. The Princess wasn't angry with Rassendyll despite tricking her. Discuss.
- *she thanked him for all he had done for Ruritania and the king.*
79. What was the lesson that Rassendyll would never forget?
- *He had learnt all about duties and responsibilities.*
80. Who saw Rassendyll off when he was going home?
- *Sapt and Fritz said goodbye to him at the train station near the border of Ruritania.*
81. What did the train passengers think when Sapt and Fritz bowed to Rassendyll?
- *They thought that an important person in a large coat and a hat was leaving Ruritania.*
82. Why was Rose disappointed?
- *Because Rassendyll told her that he hadn't written a book.*
83. Which country would Sir Jacob Borrodaile work in? - *In Ruritania in the capital Strelsau.*
84. What excuse did Rassendyll give for not accepting the job in Ruritania?
- *He looked like the king of Ruritania. It wouldn't be a good idea to work there.*
85. Why didn't Rassendyll need to be an ambassador in Ruritania? - *As he had been a king.*
86. How did Rassendyll believe in Rose's words?
- *He remembered and understood her words "A person with a position in society has responsibilities."*
87. Rassendyll became wise after his experience as a king. Illustrate.
- *He believed in Rose's words. He thought that even without a position in society. We all have a duty to help other people when we can. We all become better people for doing so.*

Quotations

- "Help, Michael! It's Rupert Hentzau."
a) Who said that? - *Antoinette de Mauban.*
b) What was wrong with the speaker? - *Rupert went to her room to punish her.*
c) What happened soon after that? - *There was a fight in which Rupert Killed Michael.*
- "This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll! She needs to be punished"
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rupert of Hentzau to Michael*
b) Who did he talk about? - *Antoinette de Mauban.*
c) What did that mean? - *She was a spy.*
- "She's my guest. It's you who needs to be punished."
a) Who said that? To whom? - *Michael to Rupert.*

- b) What did those courageous words lead to? **-Michael was killed by Rupert.**
 c) Where were they? **- In Michael's mansion.**
4. "That's for you! I know you are Rassendyll's spy!"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rupert to Johann**
 b) What did the speaker mean by "That's for you!"?
-He struck his sword into Johann but Johann was not hurt.
5. "We mustn't kill him yet or there will be trouble."
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Detchard to Bersonin.**
 b) About whom were they speaking? **- The real king.**
 c) Where were they? **- In the room where the king was imprisoned in the castle.**
6. "At last"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Detchard to Rassendyll.**
 b) Where was it said? **- In the room where the king was imprisoned in the castle.**
 c) Why did the speaker say so? **- Because he saw Rassendyll and would have the chance to kill him.**
7. "My cousin Rudolf!"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **-The king to Rassendyll.**
 b) When and where was it said?
- When Rassendyll entered the room where the king was imprisoned in the castle.
 c) Why did the speaker call the other person 'my cousin'?
- Because Amelia Rassendyll married one of the royal family in Ruritania in 1733.
8. "Push hard. Push against his leg!"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the king.**
 b) How did the king save Rassendyll? **- He pushed the legs of chair against Detchard's body.**
 c) What was the king pushing? **- The legs of a chair.**
 d) How did that help to save Rassendyll's life? **- Detchard fell down and Rassendyll killed him.**
9. "Come on, Michael! Let's fight!"
 a) Who said that? **- Rupert.**
 b) Why didn't Michael go to fight him? **- As he was already killed after being wounded by Rupert.**
10. "The Duke's dead, you have already killed him!"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Antoinette de Mauban to Rupert.**
 b) Where was the Duke killed? **- In Antoinette's room in the mansion.**
 c) Why did he go there? **- To save Antoinette who was attacked by Rupert.**
11. "Dead! That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rupert to Michael's servants.**
 b) Who was dead? **- Michael.**
12. "What did you do at the castle?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rupert to Rassendyll.**
 b) What did the addressee do at the castle? **- He killed three of the six men and set the king free.**
 c) What happened after that?
- There was a fight in which Rassendyll was injured and Rupert escaped.
13. "I made sure that you are the last of the Six men,"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Rupert**
 b) How was Rassendyll sure of that? **- Because he killed the three foreigners.**
 c) Where were they? **- In the forest near the castle.**
 d) What was the occasion? **- Rassendyll was fighting Rupert in the woods.**
14. "Do you mean that you got inside the king's prison?"
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rupert to Rassendyll.**
 b) Did the other person get inside the king's prison? How?
- Yes, He killed De Gautet and took the keys from him.
15. I did."
 a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to Rupert.**
 b) What did the speaker do?
- He got inside the king's prison, Killed Bersonin and Detchard and set the king free.

16. "And what's happened to the king?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*
- b) What happened to the king? - *He was hurt, but he was alive.*

17. "He was hurt, but he's alive."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Rupert.*
- b) Who were they talking about? - *The king.*
- c) Who hurt him? - *Detchard.*

18. "Why didn't you follow my plan? We would have worked well together."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rupert to Rassendyll.*
- b) Where were they and what had just happened?
- *They were in the forest. Rupert has just killed Michael and ran away.*
- c) What is the plan that wasn't followed? - *The plan is that Rassendyll attacks the castle bravely. Fritz and Sapt will die, and so will Michael and the King. That will leave two men alive. Rupert and Rassendyll. Rassendyll will stay as the King and Rupert will have a reward.*

19. "Get off your horse and fight like a man."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Rupert.*
- b) Was the request accepted? - *No, it wasn't.*
- c) Who saved the speaker? - *Fritz did.*
- d) Why is the speaker following him? - *As he wanted to kill him to take revenge of him.*
- e) Whose horse was the other one riding?
- *It was the horse of a boy who had been riding to market.*

20. "Go after him!"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Fritz.*
- b) Who were they talking about? - *Rupert.*
- b) Why couldn't the listener go after him? - *As Fritz saw that Rassendyll was weak.*

21. "Sir, you don't look well,"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Fritz to Rassendyll*
- b) Why didn't the addressed person look well? - *Because of his injury.*

22. "Is the king safe?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Rassendyll to Fritz.*
- b) Where was the king by then? - *He was in the mansion.*

23. "Thanks to you he is. But you're injured. Here, let me help you."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *Fritz to Rassendyll.*
- b) Who were they talking about? - *The king.*
- c) What did the speaker thank the other person for? - *For saving the king and setting him free.*

24. "Isn't that the king?"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *The boy to Fritz.*
- b) Who was that person? - *The boy whose horse was taken by Rupert*
- c) Where was the speaker going? - *The boy was going to the market.*

25. "Princess! The king is here, behind this tree!"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *The boy to the Princess*
- b) Where was the Princess going? - *Flavia was on her way to the castle to see the king.*

26. "This is not the King. "

- a) Who was the speaker? To whom? - *Sapt to the Princess.*
- b) About whom were they speaking? - *Rassendyll.*
- c) Where was the real King at that moment? - *In the castle.*

27. "What do you mean it's not the King?"

- a) Who was the speaker? To whom? - *Flavia to Fritz.*
- b) Where were they? - *In the forest near the castle of Zenda.*
- c) About whom were they talking? - *Rassendyll.*

28. "What you say is nonsense. The king is injured in the castle."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - *The Marshall to the boy.*
- b) What is it that the speaker thinks is nonsense?

- He doesn't think that the king is behind the tree as the boy says.

c) What do they finally find? **- They find that he isn't the King. He is the pretend king.**

29. "No, really, he is here. He fought a man who took my horse."

a) Who said that? To whom? **-The boy to the Marshall.**

b) About whom was he speaking? **- Rassendyll, the pretend king.**

c) Who took the speaker's horse? **- Rupert.**

30. "This boy says the king's over there behind that tree,"

a) Who said that? To whom? **-The Marshall to Sapt.**

b) Who was over there behind that tree? **- Rassendyll.**

c) Why was he there? **- As he didn't want Flavia to see him.**

31. "No, he's in the castle behind me,"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to the Marshall.**

b) How did the speaker say so? Why?

- He said so with a smile because it was time to tell the truth about who the real king was.

32. "Please, come and see if you don't believe me,"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The boy to Sapt.**

b) Where did the speaker want the other person to go? Why?

- Behind the tree to see the king (Rassendyll)

33. "I'll go."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to the boy and the Marshall.**

b) Where will the speaker go? **- Behind the tree to see the king (Rassendyll)**

34. "Let me come, too."

a) Who said that? To whom? **-The Princess to Sapt.**

b) Where will the speaker go? Why? **- Behind the tree to see the king (Rassendyll)**

35. "Then come alone."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to the Princess.**

b) Why did the speaker want the other person to go alone?

- Because he didn't want the others to know the real identity of the person behind the tree.

36. "It is you! Are you hurt? What's this game you are playing?"

a) Who said that? To whom? **-The Princess to Rassendyll and Sapt.**

b) Where did this conversation take place? **- In the forest near the castle of Zenda.**

37. "This is not the king."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to the Princess.**

b) Who were they talking about? **- Rassendyll (the pretend king).**

38. "He is the king! It's the face! Rudolf, look at me! What's happening?"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The Princess to Rassendyll and Sapt.**

b) Who does "he" refer to? **- Rassendyll.**

c) Was he really the king? **- No, he wasn't.**

39. "Forgive me, Madame. I'm not the king"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the Princess.**

b) Where did this conversation take place? **- In the forest near the castle of Zenda.**

40. "Come. It's time you came into the castle. We have much to discuss."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Sapt to the Princess.**

b) What did he mean with "We have much to discuss."?

- He wanted to tell the princess about their plan.

41. "Cousin! My friend! You're injured, too. We are always the same, you and I!"

a) Who said that? To whom? **-The real king to Rassendyll**

b) How far was the king kind? **- He always called Rassendyll "cousin".**

c) Who injured them? **- Detchard.**

42. "Thank you. I hoped that tomorrow, you would come with me to Streilsau and tell everyone about the brave things you have done, but Sapt says that this isn't possible"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The real king to Rassendyll.**

b) What did the speaker thank the other person for?

- For replacing the king in the coronation and setting him free.

c) Why did Sapt say that this wasn't possible?

- Because Rassendyll looked exactly like the king and people wouldn't know who the real king was.

43. "He's right, sir. My work in your country is complete."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the king.**

b) What does "he" refer to? **- Sapt.**

c) What was he right at? **- It wasn't possible for Rassendyll to go with the king to Strelsau.**

44. "People know the king was injured so they won't be surprised to see me different."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The king to Rassendyll.**

b) Why did the speaker say so? **- To justify why he looked different.**

45. "I'd be happy to help you again, sir"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the king.**

b) How far was the speaker helpful?

- He helped the king to get his crown and taught him how a real king should be.

c) Where were they? **- In the mansion.**

46. "The Princess has asked to see you. She can come in now."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The king to Rassendyll.**

b) Why did the Princess ask to see the other person?

- To thank him for all he'd done for Ruritania.

47. "Does she know everything?"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the king.**

b) Who does "she" refer to? **- Princess Flavia.**

c) What did she know? **- Rassendyll was not the real king.**

48. "It seems you have tricked me."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The Princess to Rassendyll.**

b) Why did the speaker say so?

- Because Rassendyll pretended to be the king and she didn't find out.

c) What was the listener's reaction? **- He apologised.**

49. "I'd like to apologise to you for this."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the Princess.**

b) Why did the speaker apologise? **- Because he pretended to be the king and she didn't find out.**

c) Did the other person accept the apology? **- Yes, because he did so for the good of Ruritania.**

50. "You don't need to apologize. I should thank you for all you have done for Ruritania."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The Princess to Rassendyll.**

b) About what did the listener want to apologise? **- About tricking the Princess.**

c) What do these words show us about the speaker? **- She loved her country.**

51. "I've learnt about duties and responsibilities. It's a lesson I'll never forget."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rassendyll to the Princess.**

b) How did the speaker learn about duties and responsibilities? **- By being a king for some time.**

52. "And we'll never forget how you have helped the king."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- The Princess to Rassendyll.**

b) How did the listener help the king? **- He replaced him in the coronation. He also gained popularity for him among poor people. He set the king free.**

53. "The ambassador has a job for you soon. He knows the country he'll be sent to"

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rose to Rassendyll.**

b) Who was that ambassador? **- Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**

c) Where would this ambassador work? **- In Ruritania.**

54. "Ruritania. Sir Jacob Borrodaile is to be the British ambassador in Strelsau."

a) Who said that? To whom? **- Rose to Rassendyll.**

b) What did the speaker want the other person to do?

- To work as an assistant to the ambassador.

c) Did the addressee accept the job? Why? Why not? **- No, he refused it because he had been king of Ruritania for some time and he looked exactly like the king.**

55. "I don't think it would be a good idea for me to work there."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rose.**
- b) What does "there" refer to? - **Strelsau, the capital of Ruritania.**
- c) Why wouldn't it be a good idea for him to work there?
- **Because he had been king of Ruritania for some time and he looked exactly like the king.**

56. "But you promised you would take the job."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rose to Rassendyll.**
- b) What job did the other person promise to take?
- **As an assistant to an ambassador, Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**
- c) Why didn't the addressee accept the job?
- **Because he had been king of Ruritania for some time and he looked exactly like the king.**

57. "You're right, but please, look at this."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rassendyll to Rose and Robert.**
- b) What did the speaker want the other people to look at?
- **A photograph in a newspaper which showed the King's coronation.**
- c) Why did the speaker want the other people to look at it?
- **To see how exactly he looked like the king of Ruritania.**

58. "Yes, you look very like the king of Ruritania ... But this is just an excuse."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rose to Rassendyll.**
- b) What was this an excuse for? - **For not accepting the job.**

59. "You could have been an ambassador yourself one day!"

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rose to Rassendyll.**
- b) What made this unlikely?
- **Rassendyll refused to work as an assistant to an ambassador, Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**

60. "If you don't go you'll never be anything important."

- a) Who said that? To whom? - **Rose to Rassendyll.**
- b) Where was the other person supposed to go?
- **To Strelsau to work as an assistant to an ambassador, Sir Jacob Borrodaile.**

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. Johann got into Antoinette's room, so she cried for help.
- 2-Michael wanted to punish Antoinette for helping Rassendyll.
- 3-Rupert told Johann that he was a spy to Michael.
- 4-Rassendyll found the keys in Rupert's clothes.
- 5-Rassendyll killed Bersonin with his gun.
- 6-Detchard killed the farmer who prevented him from killing the king-.
- 7-Detchard was a much better tradesman than Rassendyll.
- 8-The king pushed the legs of a table into Detchard's body.
- 9-Rassendyll could kill Rupert when he fell over the doctor's body.
- 10-Rupert took a cart from a boy going to the market.
- 11-The King met Antoinette was in Paris.
- 12-Antoinette didn't like Michael's ambitions to be Duke.
- 13-Rassendyll rewarded Johann who was his servant.
- 14-Sapt believed that Rassendyll wanted to be King forever.
- 15-When Antoinette screamed, Johann was in her room.
- 16-The King was killed by one of own men in the end.
- 17-Flavia tried to help Rassendyll rescue the King.
- 18-The boy told the Princess, the King was behind that castle.
- 19-People knew that the King fought with his brother to set a relative free.
- 20-The Duke locked Antoinette in the hotel.

Questions of the Set Book

A. Answer these questions.

1. Where does Rassendyll wait for it to be two o'clock?
- **He waits by the drawbridge gate next to the castle.**
2. Rassendyll has asked Antoinette to cry for help at two o'clock. Why does she do it earlier?

- **Because she is being attacked by Rupert. He wants to punish her for writing to Rassendyll.**
- 3. Why does Rassendyll kill De Gautet with a sword and not with a gun?
 - **Because he doesn't want to make any noise and attract other people.**
- 4. How does Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?
 - **He takes them from De Gautet's clothes after he kills him.**
- 5. Who gets killed in the first room of the King's prison? Who gets killed in the room where the King is? Who gets wounded?
 - **Bersonin gets killed in the first room. In the room where the King is, the doctor is killed by Detchard, and Detchard is killed by Rassendyll. The King and Rassendyll are both wounded.**
- 6. Why doesn't the King fight Detchard directly? How does he help Rassendyll?
 - **The King is weak from illness and in chains. He can't move much because of the chains. He helps Rassendyll by pushing a chair into Detchard as he is fighting. (This makes him lose his balance and fall over the doctor's body. Then it is easy for Rassendyll to kill him.)**
- 7. Who kills the Duke? - **Rupert Hentzau.**
- 8. Why does Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?
 - **Because Fritz comes with a gun and Rupert knows he can't fight both of them. (A gun can kill from a distance. Fritz can kill Rupert from a distance before Rupert can kill Rassendyll with a sword.)**
- 9. How does the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll? Why does Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree?
 - **The boy runs out and says the King is behind the tree, but Strakencz and the Princess think that the King is in the castle. Sapt has a problem to explain this. He asks the Princess to come alone because he doesn't want Marshal Strakencz to know about Rassendyll.**
- 10. Why does Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered? What do Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King and to the prisoner? Why does Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle? - **Sapt doesn't want his men or the servants to see who the prisoner really is. They think that the King was wounded in the fight to rescue the prisoner, and that the prisoner went after Rupert Hentzau. Rassendyll waits until he can go into the castle under the cover of dark. He doesn't want anyone to see him.**
- 11. How does Rassendyll teach the King how to be a real king?
 - **He takes his responsibilities as King seriously and tries to run the country well. He risks his own life to rescue the King, could have remained King.**
- 12. What does Rassendyll mean when he writes "Nobody knew where Rupert had disappeared to, and the thought of the man who had almost beaten me still makes my heart beat louder in my chest"? - **It means when he thinks of Rupert he gets excited or angry. He wishes he could find him and fight him.**
- 13. Do you think Rassendyll was right to pretend to be the King for the coronation? Was he right to continue to pretend to be the King for so long? - **Students' opinions.**
- 14. Why doesn't Rassendyll remain the King? If he was a wiser and better ruler than the real King, would it be wrong for him to remain King? - **Students' opinions.**
- 15. What does Rassendyll learn from his adventures?
 - **He learns responsibility, how to do the (morally) right thing. (Other answers possible)**

B. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false statements.

- 1. Antoinette de Mauban calls for help at the appointed time. (F)
 - **It is almost an hour early.**
- 2. Johann is not seriously hurt in the fighting. (T)
- 3. When Rassendyll enters the prison, De Gautet and Hentzau are there. (F)
 - **Bersonin and Detchard are there.**
- 4. The doctor tries to protect the King. (T)
- 5. The Duke's servants do not accept Rupert as their leader. (T)
- 6. Rassendyll does not wound Rupert before he escapes. (F)
 - **He manages to cut Rupert's cheek.**
- 7. Rupert thinks that if the Duke is dead, Rassendyll will remain King and reward him. (T)
- 8. Johann and Antoinette know that the prisoner was the King. (T)
- 9. Rassendyll spends the day in the mansion in the room with the King. (F)

- He spends the day in the forest. He comes to the castle at night and stays in the rooms that had been the King's prison.

10. The King wants Rassendyll to come to Strelsau. (T)

11. Back home, Rassendyll agrees to work with Sir Jacob Borrodaile. (F)

- He refuses because Sir Jacob is going to be the ambassador to Ruritania, and there will be problems because Rassendyll looks like the King.

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll! She needs to be punished!"

1. Who says this to whom? - **Rupert Hentzau says this to Duke Michael.**

2. Who is "this woman"? - **"This woman" is Antoinette de Mauban.**

3. What is the speaker doing while saying this?

- He is attacking Antoinette and fighting with Duke Michael.

"Dead! That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."

1. Who says this to whom?

- Rupert Hentzau says this to the Duke's servants (standing near the door of the mansion).

2. Where is the speaker? - **He is standing on the drawbridge (between the mansion and castle).**

3. Do the people obey him? What happens?

- No, they don't obey him. They let Madame de Mauban try to shoot him.

"Why didn't you follow my plan? We could have worked well together."

1. Who says this to whom? - **Rupert Hentzau says this to Rassendyll.**

2. Where are they and what has just happened? - **They are in the forest near the castle. Rupert has killed the Duke; Rassendyll has killed the others of the Six Men and rescued the King.**

3. What was the plan that wasn't followed?

- Rassendyll would attack when Rupert said to. The King, the Duke, Sapt, and Fritz would all die. Rassendyll would remain the King and Hentzau would be rewarded.

"I hoped that tomorrow, you'd come with me to Strelsau and tell everyone about the brave things that you've done, but Sapt tells me that this isn't possible."

1. Who says this to whom? - **The (real) King says this to Rassendyll.**

2. Where are they? - **They are in a bedroom in the mansion.**

3. What do these words tell you about the speaker's character and the speaker's relationship with Sapt? - **The speaker perhaps does not have good judgement. He depends a lot on Sapt. He needs Sapt to give him advice.**

Test Yourself

Answer the following questions:

1-Why did Rupert want to punish Antoinette?

2-What was Michael's reaction to Rupert's words about punishing Antoinette?

3-How did the Intense argument جدال between Rupert and Michael change into a flight?

4-What happened between Johann and Rupert in the room?

5-Why was killing Johann meant the failure of the plan فشل الخطة?

6-Why did Rassendyll think Rupert would surely be caught?

7-Unlike Rassendyll's expectations توقعات, how did Rupert go out of the castle safe ?

8-How did Rassendyll get the keys ?

9-Why could Rassendyll carry out his plan to save the king?

10-How did Rassendyll put an end to Bersonin's evil وضع نهاية لشروعه

11-Why was the king in great danger after killing Bersonin?

12-How did Rassendyll manage to unlock the door of the room of the King?

13-How far was the doctor brave?

14-How could Detchard kill the doctor?

15-Why was it dangerous to fight with Detchard?

16-Why was it possible for Detchard to kill Rassendyll?

17-How did the king help Rassendyll in his fight with Detchard?

18-How was Detchard killed?

19-How far was Rupert a fierce fighter مقاتل شرس?

20-How was Antoinette about to kill Rupert?

21-Why did Rassendyll decide to chase يطارد Rupert?

- 22-Why could Rupert get a horse in the forest?
- 23-Why did Michael's plan to stop Antoinette warning Rassendyll come to a failure?
- 24-Why did Rupert choose the wrong time to punish Antoinette?
- 25-Who killed Michael?
- 26-Who killed Michael?
- 27-What wrong idea did Michael have about Rassendyll after the coronation?
- 28-Why did Rassendyll really accept to pretend to be the king?
- 29-Why couldn't Johann open the castle doors as planned?
- 30-How did Sapt find the king?
- 31-Where was the king taken?
- 32-Who looked after the king in the mansion?
- 33-Why did Fritz go to look for Rassendyll in the forest?
- 34-What did Sapt ask Antoinette and Johann to do?
- 35-What were the servants told about the king's injury?
- 36-What was the news sent to the Princess at Tarlenheim?
- 37-What did the people of Strelsau know the king's injury and the Duke's death?
- 38-Why did the Princess disobey Sapt's command to stay at Tarlenheim?
- 39-What did Rassendyll do when he saw the Princess going to Zenda?
- 40-Who attracted the Princess's attention to Rassendyll's hidden Place?
- 41-What did the boy offer to do?
- 42-What was everyone talking about?
- 43-Who objected to the king's idea about Rassendyll's going to Strelsau?
- 44-Why was the king greatly indebted to مدین بشدة لـ Rassendyll?
- 45-What did Rassendyll apologize to the Princess for?

Quotations

"Come. It's time you came into the castle. We have much to discuss."

- 1-Who says this to whom?
- 2-What truth-is revealed now?
- 3-What are they going to discuss?

"You've shown me what a true King should be."

- 1-Who said these words? To whom?
- 2-What was wrong with the King then?
- 3-What was the listener's reply?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1-Rassendyll hid his dog in the trees and waited near the drawbridge
- 2-Michael went into Antoinette's room, so she was angry.
- 3-When Michael saw Rupert in his room with Flavia, he got angry.
- 4-Antoinette was fighting Rassendyll who got into her room.
- 5-The King was wounded by Rupert.
- 6-Bersonin was very good with a sword.
- 7-Michael could get the key and open the 900r after killing De Gautet .
- 8-The doctor saved the Duke when he held Detchard .
- 9-Antoinette had a gun but couldn't kill Michael.
- 10-Johann wounded the Duke.
- 11-Detchard killed the King when he held him.
- 12-Fritz ran after Rupert Hentzau in the woods
- 13-Michael invited Antoinette to England to see the coronation.
- 14-Servants told Antoinette about the Duke's ambitions to become Prince.
- 15- Antoinette noticed that Michael had good plans.
- 16-Sapt helped Antoinette to send letters to' Rassendyll.
- 17-Detchard found out thatJohann was a spy to Rassendyll.
- 18- Michael thought that Rupert wanted to be King forever.
- 19-The King was carried to the Tarlenheim.
- 20-Flavia and a doctor were looking after the King who was injured.
- 21-People knew the King fought with Sapt to free a friend of his.
- 22-Flavia ordered the Police Chief to take her to Zenda.
- 23-The girl whose horse Rupert had taken followed Rassendvll.
- 24-Michael sat behind a tree so as not to be seen by the Princess.

Final Revision

Chapter 1

Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Rudolf Rassendyll when the story begins?
2. Why does Rose want from Rudolf Rassendyll?
3. What job is offered to Rassendyll?
4. What skills does Rassendyll have?
5. What does Rassendyll decide to do for the next six months?
6. Why does Rudolf accept the job?
7. What event is to take place in Ruritania?
8. What does Rassendyll know about Antoinette de Mauban from his friend?
9. Why do the border guards stare at Rassendyll?
10. Why does Rudolf decide to stop at Zenda?
11. Where does Rassendyll stay in Zenda?
12. Who is Duke Michael?
13. Why does the woman in the hotel want the Duke to be the king not his brother?
14. Why does Rudolf decide to walk in the forest?
15. Why is Johann, the Duke's forest guard, surprised to see Rassendyll?
16. What do both Duke Michael and the king want?
17. What goes around the old part of castle?
18. What links the two parts of the castle?
19. Who finds Rassendyll in the forest? Why were they surprised?
20. How far is it from Zenda to Strelsau?

Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

1. "My brother's Lord Burlesdon and you are a Countess."

- a) Who said this to whom?
- b) Why does the speaker say this?
- c) What's the speaker's brother's job?

2. She's angry because she thinks I don't do anything."

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) What does the underlined pronoun refer to?
- c) How do they solve the problem?

3. "He also realises his position in society has responsibilities. You only see opportunities in yours."

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

3. "I don't know if you can be good friends if you want the same thing."

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) About whom is the speaker talking?
- c) What is the same thing they want?

4. "No, I've never seen him, but I hope to do so on Wednesday at the coronation"

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) About whom is the speaker talking?
- c) Why does the speaker say this?

5. "Good evening, sir. I'm sorry, I didn't expect to see any new guests here."

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) What does «here» refer to?
- c) Why, do you think, it isn't expected to see any new guests at this place?

6. "Why look at him! It's amazing! He looks just like the King!"

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) About whom is the speaker talking?
- c) Why is it amazing?

7. "We both work for the King of Ruritania."

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) What does the underlined pronoun refer to?
- c) Who is the king the speaker mentioned?

8. "Although they look like identical twins, you do not have identical personalities or skills."

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) What does the underlined pronoun refer to?
- c) What are the differences between these two persons in the speaker's opinion?

9. "Perhaps they are alike then, because I like to have an easy life, too!"

- a) Who says this to whom?
- b) What does the underlined pronoun refer to?
- c) How are these persons alike?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1- Rudolf Rassendyll is a careless young man with thirty years.
- 2- Because Robert Rassendyll is carefree, Rose isn't pleased.
- 3- As he has enough money and his uncle was An important man, Rudolf Rassendyll doesn't have to find a job.
- Rudolf Rassendyll was in the habit of working hard.
- 5- Unlike Rassendyll, Robert recognises the opportunities of himself.
- 6- In sixty months Sir Jacob will be an ambassador.
- 7- Rudolf Rassendyll was on the same train as George.
- 8- Rudolf Rassendyll visited Ruritania to attend the coronation of King Michael.
- 9- Rose was pleased when Rudolf Rassendyll said he might write a book about the educational problems in the country.
- 10- Antoinette de Mauban was rich and pessimistic.
- 11- Rassendyll has a striking difference physical appearance with King Rudolf.
- 12- Many Ruritaniens like Michael because he has red hair.
- 13- Like the daughter, her mother likes Michael to be the king.
- 14- The thing that distinguishes the Elphbergs was that they had black hair.
- 15- Unlike Robert, Rudolf has black hair.

Advanced Exercises A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Besides his social position, Rudolf Rassendyll had good qualifications. Explain.
- 2- Why is there a similarity in the colour of hair between Rudolf Rassendyll and Rudolf Elphberg ?
- 3- Did Rudolf Rassendyll write any books? If yes, about what?
- 4- How did Rudolf hide his plan to go to the forest to see the King from Johaam and the innkeepers?

B) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1) Rudolf intended to travel from Zenda to Strelsau on a horse.
- 2) Colonel Sapt thought that there weren't any differences between Rudolf the King.

Chapter 2

Answer the following questions:

1. Why is the King surprised ?
2. Why does the King call Rassendyll as his cousin?
3. Why don't Fritz and Sapt agree to Rassendyll's travelling to Strelsau?
4. Where do they go together?
5. What is the King fond of ?
6. To whom does the hunting lodge belong? What does he use it for?
7. Who serve the King in the hunting lodge?
8. Why don't Fritz and Sapt want to eat snuch?
9. What does Sapt remind the King of before eating?
10. What does Duke Michael send?
11. What happens to the King? .
12. How do they wake up Rudolf Rassendyll ?
13. Could they wake up the King? Why?
14. What would happen if the King didn't go to the coronation?
15. Who is waiting in the capital?
16. Why can't they say that the King is poisoned?
17. How can they solve the problem?
18. What will happen if Duke Michael becomes a King
19. What is the plan to get the King to Strelsau ?
20. Where do they hide the King?
21. What does Sapt tell Rudolf?
22. Why is that important?
23. When does Rassendyll begin to feel that he was the King?
24. What are the two divisions in the capital??
25. Who wants Duke Michael to be their King? Why?

B) Quotations:

1. "Whether I like it or not, you can't help looking like me. No, I'll happily help you.

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Where does he meet him/her?

c) Is the speaker friendly ? What will he do?

2. "To Strelsau, sir. To the coronation."

a) Who says this to Whom?

b) Why is the speaker going to Strelsau ?

c) What does the other one imagine on hearing this?

3. "What would my brother Michael think if he saw us two together!"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What do the underlined words 'my brother' refer to?

c) What would happen if Michael saw them together?

4. "Don't worry, sir. I understand the problem! I'll leave Ruritania today."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What problem does the speaker understand?

c) What is the other one's opinion?

5. "We can still eat well, and good food is more important than sleep! Now Mr Rassendyll, what's your first name?"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What is the speaker fond of?

c) Why doesn't he / she want to sleep like the others?

6. "Josef will say the hunting lodge is empty. This is only a chance."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) To whom will Josef say the hunting lodge is empty?

c) Do you think Josef is a good servant or he will reveal their secret?

7. "I think she heard us. After we've moved the King, I'll speak to her."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) About whom is the speaker talking?

c) What will be done with her?

8. "Nervous. I'm not made of stone, you know."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Why does the speaker say this?

c) What makes him nervous?

9. "Let's hope we're all alive tonight."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Does the speaker fear anything that makes him say so?

c) What does the speaker mean by all?

10. "God save the King!"

a) Who says this?

b) When is it said?

c) What will happen if they know the truth?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Rudolf the fifth invites Rassendyll to have dinner with him in the castle.

2. The King lay senseless as he drank poison.

3. If Michael becomes the new King, The Duke may be killed.

4. Colonel Sapt splashed a bucket of water on Rassendyll to wash him.

5. Rassendyll realises that the King had been drugged.

6. It isn't wise to tell the people that the King is well.

7. Michael will take the chance to be crowned as King of Ruritania if Rudolf doesn't come to Zenda.

8. Sapt and Josef convinced Rassendyll to be the King.

9. Although it was a risk, Rudolf Rassendyll agrees to kill the King.

10. Sapt dresses Rassendyll in the King's clothes.

11. Rassendyll has dinner in the station restaurant in Strelsau.

12. Fritz tells the King who Rassendyll is.

13. Michael and Sapt ride with Rassendyll.

14. The King is killed.

15. The plan to bring the real King to Strelsau is next day.

Advanced Exercise

1. The crown equals some cakes. Explain how.

2. Regardless of the resemblance in appearance, Rassendyll succeeded in playing the King's role which needed special skills. Give reasons.

3. Telling Rassendyll about the King's past life and his conditions was the most important thing Sapt did. Show how.

Chapter 3

Answer the following questions:

1- How do the people receive the King?

2- What kind of people live in the old part of the city?

3- What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?

4- Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?

5- What did Rassendyll do during the coronation?

6- Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees Rassendyll (the King)?

7- Does Michael realise that this is not the real King? How do you know?

8- Does the Princess know that this is not the real King? What does she say about him?

9- Does Michael know what happened?

10- What message has Duke Michael received?

- 11- What does Fritz wish for? What does he warn Rassendyll about?
- 12- Why do Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?
- 13- How do they get a permit from the King? .
- 14- What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?
- 5- How do Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace?
- 16- Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road?
- 17- Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll take?
- 18- What do you think the message "all is well" means?
- 19- What happened to the servant Josef?
- 20- What happened to the real King?
- 21- What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?
- 22- What does Sapt want Rassendyll to do?
- 23- As Rassendyll is angry about what Michael has done, what does he , suggest?
- 24- What is Sapt's opinion of Johann's mother?
- 25- What would have happened if Rudolf Rassendyll hadn't gone to Strelsau?

B) Quotations:

- 1- "Don't you understand me? Tell your soldiers to go!"
 - a) Who says this to whom?
 - b) What makes the speaker angry?
 - c) What is the speaker going to do?
- 2- "His skin's very white."
 - a) Who says this to whom?
 - b) What does the underlined pronoun " his" refer to?
 - c) When does he say this?
- 3- "I think I want to change now that I'm King,"
 - a) Who says this to whom?
 - b) When does he say this?
 - c) Has he really changed or is he another man?
- 4- "That was a day to remember. I think I'd like to be King for a da .
 - a) Who says this to whom?
 - b) What does the speaker wish?
 - c) Do you think it is easy for anyone to be a King? Why did Rassendyll s
- 5- "Well, in a few hours, I'll become Rudolf Raisen B once more '
 - a) Who says this to whom?
 - b) What makes him say this?
 - c) When will he become Rassendyll again?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1- In the area loyal to The Duke, Rassendyll ordered the horsemen to surround him.
- 2- Rassendyll continued his ride through the street expecting a cry from the Marshal, , 3- As the Marshal changes the routë, Rassendyll thinks he wants to arrest him.
- 4- Rassendyll wants the people to see that their King fears them.
- 5- Rassendyll went inside a beautiful building where he saw princess Amelia.
- 6- Michael is a man with red cheeks, red eyes and dark hair.
- 7- Rassendyll and Sapt found the body of Josef but the King was killed.
- 8- Sapt looked worried when he knew that Rassendyll had news from Zenda.
- 9- Sapt said that Robert had to leave Ruritania at once.
- 10- Colonel Sapt told Fritz to guard the King's office.
- 11- Colonel Sapt gave Fritz a big coat and a hat to wear.
- 12- Rassendyll could see the Duke and Josef's brother (Max Holf) on the road- 13- Rassendyll and Colonel Sapt took the road to the castle at Zenda.
- 14- They saw the dirty handkerchiefs which Sapt had used to hang up the old woman on the ground.
- 15- Rassendyll suggested they go back to Strelsau and collect servants to save the King.

Advanced Exercise

1. How did Rudolf Rassendyll do the real King a great favour in the old town?
2. Princess Flavia was very observant. Explain.
3. Why did Rudolf Rassendyll ask Colonel Sapt not to enter the second of the cellar?
4. The expression "all is well" was repeated and everyone understood it own way. Discuss.

Chapter 4

Answer the following questions:

1. What did Michael's men do while Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz were at the coronation?
2. Who comes after Sapt and Rassendyll to Zenda and why?
3. What does Rassendyll suggest?
4. Why can't Duke Michael speak?

5. What will happen if Rassendyll doesn't go to Strelsau?
6. Why does Rassendyll agree to this dangerous plan?
7. What did Rassendyll and Sapt see outside the hunting lodge? What did they do?
8. When did they arrive at the capital, Did Fritz recognize Rassendyll?
9. How could Rassendyll perform his duties as King?
10. Why does Sapt feel that the King is not dead?
- 11- What does Rassendyll (the King) do to make himself popular?
- 12- Who does Rassendyll visit? Why?
11. Who are the Six Men?
- 14- What does Rassendyll decide to do without telling Sapt and Fritz?
- 15- What mistake did Rassendyll make, and why did no one suspect him?

Read the following

1- But the Duke knows where the real King is, and all his men know!"

a) Who says this to whom? b) Where is the real King? c) What is the speaker afraid of?

2. Of course it's a risk, but we must have a King in Strelsau, or the city will belong to Michael within twenty-four hours."

a) Who says this to whom? b) Why is it a risk?

c) What will happen if Rassendyll doesn't return to Strelsau?

12- "They'll do whatever Michael asks them to do."

a) Who says this to whom? b) About whom are they talking? c) What do you know about them?

13- "Lafortunatel) I fear you'll soon be meeting n."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What does them refer to?

c) Is it necessary to meet them? Why?

16- "You haven't asked him to come in. He's been waiting outside the room for a long time."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What does him refer to?

c) What mistake does the addressee make?

17- "I was never very good at remembering all the rules,"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Why does the speaker say this?

c) How could he cover up that mistake?

18- "We're waiting to see if his bile's poisonous."

a) Who says this to whom? b) About what are they talking? c) Does the addressee understand?

19. Three of my friends would very much like to meet you, sir. They're waiting outside."

a) Who says this to whom? b) Who are his friends? c) Why are there three only?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rassendyll (the King) is bad at fighting.

2- Rassendyll and Sapt walked on the way to Strelsau.

3- Michael's men came from Strelsau to the hunting lodge.

4- Rassendyll used his gun to attack Michael's men.

5- Colonel Sapt told Freyler that the King was hurt because he was shot- truth

6- Fritz bowed to Rassendyll because he recognised him. wrong

7- Rassendyll completes all the documents of the King. Situation

8- The Duke is accompanied by the three Ruritans of his Six Men. .

9- When Rassendyll (the King) rode his horse through the park with Fritz .

10- Rassendyll (the King) visited the Princess to ask her to marry him.)

11- The Duke was very happy when Rassendyll (the King) opened the door of the guest room.

12- Rassendyll tells Michael that his hand is hurt because he caught his finger in a door.

13- The people hated Princess Flavia.

14- No one was following Rassendyll (the King) on his way to the home of Princess Flavia.

15- Duke Michael came to the Princess's palace alone.

Advanced Exercise

1. Both Rassendyll and Duke Michael are good actors. Discuss.

2. Rassendyll's secret was nearly discovered by Princess Flavia. Show

3. While Fritz is rash but Colonel Sapt is quiet and cunning. Explain.

4. How did Rassendyll increase Duke Michael's anger in the Princess's

B Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

1. Who said this? To whom? 2. What does this statement show about the speaker's character?

3. Does the addressee really want what is said in the question?

Answer the following questions:

1. Sapt brings news of the real king. What is it?
2. Why does Rassendyll want to go to Zenda?
3. What does Sapt mean when he says "You'll probably stay there forever if alone. you do"?
4. Where does Sapt wait for Rassendyll when he goes to see Antoinette?
5. What does Rassendyll find and see when he opens the gate to the summer ad Fritz, and kill the real house?
6. How does Rassendyll defend himself against the three attackers?
7. Why does Antoinette de Mauban tell Rassendyll the plan?
8. What deal was offered to Rassendyll by Michael's men?
9. Who sends a letter to Rassendyll ? What does this person want?
10. Why does Sapt think the King is in the Castle of Zenda?
11. Why doesn't Rassendyll throw the letter away?
12. What is Michael's plan to become King?
13. How does Rassendyll escape from the summer house?
14. How does Rassendyll make a new use of the table?
15. What do you think of Rassendyll now, compared with what you thought he will be murdered too.
16. How can he succeed to seize or kill Rassendyll?
17. How does Rassendyll find he was losing control of his feelings?
18. Why does Sapt interrupt his conversation with the Princess?
19. Why is it decided to go to Zenda?
20. What proves that the letter was written by Antoinette de Mauban?

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

1- "Here's a letter for you,"

- a) Who says this to whom? b) Who sends this letter? c) What does it say?

2- We asked where the rest of the Six Men were, and found out that they are ban. all there at the castle."

- a) Who says this to whom? b) Who are the Six Men? Why are the rest in the castle?
c) What does this show?

3- "If not today, then soon. I must go there."

- a) Who says this to whom? b) About what does the speaker talk? c) Why does he want to go there?

4- "De Gautet, Bersoni and Detchard are in Strelsau, and any one of them could catch you easily"

- a) Who says this to whom? b) What does the speaker warn the addressee about?
c) What precautions does the speaker take?

find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1- Sapt will be the head of Strelsau if no message comes from the King for three days.
- 2- Antoinette de Mauban warns Rassendyll about the Princess .
- 3- Rassendyll nearly tells Antoinette de Mauban the truth about the King.
- 4- The Marshal will be the ruler of Ruritania if the King is dead.
- 5- Sapt will be killed if Rassendyll is killed.
- 6- Freyler works for Duke Michael
- 7- Michael wants to arrest Rassendyll and the real King, '
- 8- Antoinette de Mauban reveals to Rassendyll the king's plan.
- 9- Detchard offers Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and forty thousand position pounds.
- 10- Antoinette de Mauban sends a letter of warning to the prince .
- 11- A messenger will be sent to Zenda and Rassendyll will be murdered too.
- 12- Antoinette de Mauban helps Rassendyll as she doesn't like the king.
- 13- Rupert is wounded in the arm by Rassendyll's bullet.
- 14- To escape from the palace , Rassendyll should climb the ladder against the wall
- 15- Sapt looks through a gap and sees three men standing outside.
- 16- A conference is held for the Princess.
- 17- Fritz tells Rassendyll to ask the Princess to marry him.
- 18- Duke Michael invites the Princess to visit him in Strelsau but she refuses.
- 19- Princess Flavia receives a threat from Antoinette de Mauban.

20- Michael tells the Marshal he is leaving Strelsau.

Advanced Exercise user the following questions:

- 1- The iron table was more useful than guns and revolvers. Show.
- 2- Rassendyll's adventure in Ruritania made him a different person. Discuss.
- 3- What shows that Rassendyll (the King) cares for Princess Flavia?
- 4- Sapt trusts Rassendyll as he proved to be a good and honourable man. Show.

Chapter 6

Answer the following questions:

- 1- What must the Marshal promise Rassendyll to do?
- 2- Where is Rassendyll going to hunt the big animal?
- 3- Show how the Princess is loyal to her country.
- 4- Why do Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda?
- 5- Who do they talk to in the inn?
- 6- What is Sapt's opinion of Rupert?
- 7- Why is the innkeeper's daughter sorry?
- 8- What is Rassendyll's promise to the innkeeper's daughter?
- 9- What happened to Bernenstein?
- 10- What can't the Duke and his men say in public?
- 11- What offer does Rassendyll refuse?
- 12- Why will Johann be in trouble if Michael's plan is successful?
- 13- Why isn't it easy to sleep in the castle?
- 14- What are the only two ways to save the King?
- 15- Why does Rassendyll want to meet Johann?

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions

- 1- "You must promise that you'll protect Princess Flavia from the Duke."
- a) Who says this to whom? b) What must the other person promise?
- c) Why must she promise to do this?
- 2- "The thing I hunt is a very big animal. Because I'll be hunting Michael."
- a) Who says this to whom? b) Why is the speaker going to hunt Michael?
- c) Where is he going to do this?
- 3- "I don't really know what's going on, but I'll do whatever is right for Ruritania."
- a) Who says this to whom? b) Why doesn't the speaker know what's going on?
- c) The speaker seems to be loyal to her country. Show how.
- 4- "That Rupert's the worst criminal of them all!"
- a) Who says this to whom? b) What makes the speaker say this?
- c) What does the pronoun *them* refer to?
- 5- "I'm sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us."
- a) Who says this to whom? b) Why is the speaker sorry? c) Will the other person forgive her?
- 6- "You won't hurt him, will you, sir?"
- a) Who says this to whom? b) About whom are they talking?
- c) What is the addressee's reply?
- 7- "He saw three men in the trees and one shot him. He's upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm."
- a) Who says this to whom? b) What does the pronoun *he* refer to? c) What happened to him?
- 8- "But you can't say that in public, can you? Because then people would know you've kidnapped the real King"
- a) Who says this to whom? b) What is it that they can't say in public?
- c) Who do you think will win in the end?
- 9- "Tell the Duke that I refuse his generous offer. How's his prisoner, the way?"
- a) Who says this to whom? b) What offer does the speaker refuse?
- c) What does "his prisoner" mean?
- 10- "He seems to know that if Michael's plan is successful, he'll be in trouble because he knows too much."
- a) Who says this to whom? b) About whom are they talking?
- c) Why will he be in trouble if Michael's plan is successful?

11- "No one would believe that the king was ever there."

a) Who says this to whom? b) What does there refer to? c) Why wouldn't anyone believe that?

12- "It's not easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda because no one feels safe. Find Everyone in it is a criminal, except the King."

a) Who says this to whom? b) Why isn't it easy to sleep in the castle?

c) Is the speaker happy or sad to live there? Why? stay

13- "There are two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive"

a) Who says this to whom? b) What are these two ways?

c) Why aren't there any other ways?

14- "But you're still friends and you must ask to see him. Tell him to meet you tomorrow night at ten o'clock, then bring him to our house."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What does him refer to?

c) Why does the speaker want to meet him?

15- "Let us hope that is not necessary."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What does the underlined pronoun it refer to?

c) What does the speaker intend to do?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rassendyll tells Flavia if he doesn't come back, she must become king.

2- Tarlenheim is eighty kilometres from Zenda.

3- Rassendyll says he will kill the girl if she agrees to help them.

4- Bernenstein is upstairs in bed with a bullet in his head.

5- Johann seems sad to tell them Michael's secrets.

6- A large stone pipe led down to the castle mansion.

7- The body would then be put down the pipe and the weight of his body would keep him under water.

8- If the Duke kills the King, he will put the body into the moat with clothes on it.

9- The Castle of Zenda is a happy place.

10- Rupert stabs Rassendyll in the shoulder with his gun.

Advanced Exercise

1- How had Michael seemingly made triumph possible and ruin impossible?

2- Why did Rassendyll and his men choose the country house called Tarlenheim to stay in?

3- Rupert Hentzau proved that he is a daring and risky character. Discuss.

4- People usually say, "God save the King". This is what happens with Rassendyll more than once. Discuss.

B) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rassendyll and Fritz had their lunch in the place where Rassendyll had stayed on his first night in Ruritania.

2- The two small rooms underground had small windows.

Chapter 7

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is wrong with the King?

2. Who set out for Zenda secretly? Why?

3. Why does Rassendyll choose the night to attack the castle?

4. Who does Rassendyll find in the boat?

5. Why does Rassendyll kill Max Holf?

6. Why doesn't Max shout while being killed?

7. What is the result of the fight in the woods?

8. What did Mr. George Featherly believe?

9 Why does the Duke keep Antoinette de Mauban prisoner ?

10. Why are the people in Strelsau unhappy? What does Rassendyll do to please them?

11. What does Rassendyll ask Johann to do at night?

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

1. "Time for your sleep."

a) Who says this to whom? b) Where are they? c) What does the speaker do?

2. "The Duke doesn't want you to die, not yet anyway. Sleep well."

a) Who says this to whom? b) Why does the Duke put him there? c) How is the addressee ?

3-"I believe she and her servants were guests of Duke Michael."

a) Who says this to whom? b) About whom are they talking? c) Where is she now? Why?

4. Return in two weeks and I'll tell you what I've found."

a. Who says this to whom? b) What does the other person want?

c) Why does the speaker want him to leave?

5."He hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau."

a) Who says this to whom? b) When does the speaker say this?

c) Who is the speaker talking about?

6.That will leave two men alive: you and me. You'll stay as the King, and I'll have a reward."

a) Who says this to whom? b) What is this plan about? c) What is the result?

7."I hear there are new servants at the castle."

a) Who says this to whom? b) Why does the speaker say this?

8."Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"

a) Who says this to whom? b) What does the speaker mean by these servants?

c) What does the speaker intend to do?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Rassendyll kills Max Holf in the road.
2. Rassendyll tells Johann to open the front door of the mansion at noon.
3. Rassendyll looks at the big boat carefully.
4. The Duke offers to help Rassendyll remain King.
5. Rassendyll wounds Max Holf near the pipe.
6. Rassendyll spoils a plan to rescue the King.
7. Madame de Mauban asks for money.
8. Rupert offers to help rescue the King.
9. The Duke thinks that Rassendyll was injured while hunting.
10. Michael keeps Antoinette de Mauban a prisoner as she helps Rupert.

Advanced Exercise

1. What proves that Rassendyll(the King) has become popular with the people there? of Ruritania?
2. It is said that war has no manners. How is this statement proved right in the story?
3. Rassendyll proved that he is a man of honour. Discuss.
4. When Rassendyll saw Rupert Hentzau for the first time, Sapt said that he is the worst criminal of them all . Was he right? Why, why not?

B) Read the quotation and answer the questions:

"So if they saw me, they'd think that. I was the King."

1. Who says this to whom? 2. What does this question show about the speaker's quick thinking?
3. How would this deduction help the speaker afterwards?

Chapter 8

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Rupert want to punish Antoinette de Moaunban?
- 2- Who finds him in her room? What happened?
- 3- Who kills De Gautet? What does he take from him?
- 4- What does Rassendyll do to get into the King's room?
- 5- How does Rassendyll find the King?
- 6- Who prevents Detchard from killing the King?
- 7- How does the King help Rassendyll to kill Detchard?
- 8- Who gets killed in the King's room? Who gets wounded?
- 9- Who does Rassendyll find on the drawbridge when he opens the prison?
- 10- What does Rupert do when Antoinette de Mauban tells him that the Duke is dead?
- 11- What does Rupert do when Sapt and his men come?
- 12- Why does Rassendyll follow Rupert?
- 13- Why does Rupert escape when he sees Fritz?
- 14- Who reveals the secret of the King to the princess?
- 15- What does the real King want to do with Rassendyll?
- 16- What does Sapt say to the real King concerning Rassendyll?
- 17- What lesson has Rassendyll taught the King?
- 18- What lesson won't Rassendyll forget?

19- Why does Rassendyll refuse Sir Jacob's job?

20- Why isn't it a good idea for Rassendyll to work in Strelsau for Rassendyll (the King)?

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

1- "It's you who needs to be punished!"

a) Who says this to whom? b) Where are they? c) Why does the speaker say this?

2- "I know you're Rassendyll spy!"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Is this person really Rassendyll's spy? What does he do?

c) What does the speaker want to do with him?

3- "Push hard! Push against his legs!"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What does 'his legs' refer to?

c) What does the other person push? Why?

4- "The Duke's dead, you've already killed him!"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Why does the other person kill the Duke?

c) What does the speaker intend to do with the other one? How do you know?

5- "Thanks to you, he à But you're injured. Here, let help you."

a) Who says this to whom?

b) What does "he" refer to?

c) What does the addressee do to be thanked for?

6- "But you promised you'd take the job!"

a) Who says this to whom?

b) Did the other person really promise the speaker?

c) Why does he refuse now?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rupert wants to punish Antoinette de Mauban as she doesn't care for him.

2- Michael finds Rupert in Antoinette de Mauban's room and thanks him.

3- Rassendyll kills De Gautet and takes the sword from him.

4- Rassendyll kills Detchard to get into the King's room.

5- Rassendyll finds the King and he has a chair in his hand.

6.. The doctor prevents Detchard from killing Rassendyll.

7- Bersoni gets killed in the King's room.

8- Rassendyll finds Sapt and his men on the drawbridge when he opens the pnsion.

9- When he hears that the Duke is dead, Rupert tells the Duke's servants to take their swords and kill Antoinette de Mauban.

10- Rassendyll follows Rupert in the water and in the castle.

11- A girl reveals the secret of the King to the Princess.

12- The real King wants to punish Rassendyll for deceiving people.

13- Rassendyll has taught Rudolf Elphberg what the real queen should be.

14- Rassendyll refuses Sir Jacob's job as it is difficult.

15- Rassendyll returns to France but tells his family nothing of his adventure.

Advanced Exercise

1- Surprise was one of the main weapons of Rassendyll's plan to save the King. Discuss.

2- Adventure can teach a person more than books and universities. Discuss.

3- Show how Rassendyll proved that he is a man of honour.

4- Although Rassendyll returned safely to his country, revenge still takes part t? of his thought.